

```
$ docker service inspect --pretty web-fe
ID:          z7ovearqmruwk0u2vc5
Name:        web-fe
Service Mode: Replicated
Replicas:    5
ContainerSpec:
  Image:  nigelpoulton/gsd:1.0
  init: false
Endpoint Mode: vip
Ports:
  PublishedPort = 8080
  Protocol = tcp
  TargetPort = 80
  PublishMode = ingress
UpdateConfig:
  Parallelism:  1
  On failure:   pause
```

DOCKER DEEP DIVE

ZERO TO DOCKER IN A SINGLE BOOK

2024 Edition

By Docker Captain
Nigel Poulton

Docker Deep Dive

Zero to Docker in a single book!

Nigel Poulton

This book is for sale at <http://leanpub.com/dockerdeepdive>

This version was published on 2024-05-21

ISBN 9781916585133



This is a [Leanpub](#) book. Leanpub empowers authors and publishers with the Lean Publishing process. [Lean Publishing](#) is the act of publishing an in-progress ebook using lightweight tools and many iterations to get reader feedback, pivot until you have the right book and build traction once you do.

© 2016 - 2024 Nigel Poulton

Huge thanks to my wife and kids for putting up with a geek in the house who genuinely thinks he's a bunch of software running inside of a container on top of midrange biological hardware. It can't be easy living with me!

Massive thanks as well to everyone who watches my Pluralsight videos. I love connecting with you and really appreciate all the feedback I've gotten over the years. This was one of the major reasons I decided to write this book! I hope it'll be an amazing tool to help you drive your careers even further forward.

Contents

0: About the book	1
Part 1: The big picture stuff	4
1: Containers from 30,000 feet	5
The bad old days	5
Hello VMware!	5
VMwarts	5
Hello Containers!	6
Linux containers	6
Hello Docker!	7
Docker and Windows	7
What about WebAssembly	8
What about Kubernetes	8
2: Docker and container-related standards and projects	10
Docker	10
Container-related standards and projects	12
3: Getting Docker	16
Docker Desktop	16
Installing Docker with Multipass	19
Installing Docker on Linux	21
4: The big picture	22
The Ops Perspective	22
The Dev Perspective	26
Part 2: The technical stuff	30
5: The Docker Engine	31

CONTENTS

Docker Engine – The TLDR	31
The Docker Engine	32
The influence of the Open Container Initiative (OCI)	34
runc	35
containerd	35
Starting a new container (example)	36
What's the shim all about?	38
How it's implemented on Linux	38
6: Working with Images	40
Docker images – The TLDR	40
Intro to images	41
Pulling images	42
Image registries	43
Image naming and tagging	46
Images and layers	48
Pulling images by digest	54
Multi-architecture images	57
Vulnerability scanning with Docker Scout	61
Deleting Images	63
Images – The commands	65
7: Working with containers	67
Containers – The TLDR	67
Containers vs VMs	68
Images and Containers	71
Check Docker is running	72
Starting a container	73
How containers start apps	74
Connecting to a container	76
Inspecting container processes	77
The <code>docker inspect</code> command	78
Writing data to a container	79
Stopping, restarting, and deleting a container	80
Killing a container's main process	82
Debugging slim images and containers with Docker Debug	84
Self-healing containers with restart policies	89
Containers – The commands	92
8: Containerizing an app	94
Containerizing an app – The TLDR	94
Containerize a single-container app	95
Moving to production with multi-stage builds	106

CONTENTS

Buildx, BuildKit, drivers, and Build Cloud	111
Multi-architecture builds	113
A few good practices	116
Containerizing an app – The commands	118
9: Multi-container apps with Compose	120
Docker Compose – The TLDR	120
Compose background	121
Installing Compose	121
The sample app	122
Compose files	124
Deploying apps with Compose – The commands	133
10: Docker Swarm	135
Docker Swarm – The TLDR	135
Swarm primer	136
Build a secure swarm cluster	137
Docker Swarm – The Commands	158
11: Deploying apps with Docker Stacks	160
Deploying apps with Docker Stacks – The TLDR	160
Build a Swarm lab	161
The sample app	162
Deploy the app	168
Managing the app	171
Deploying apps with Docker Stacks – The Commands	176
12: Docker and WebAssembly	177
Pre-reqs	178
Intro to Wasm and Wasm containers	180
Write a Wasm app	181
Containerize a Wasm app	183
Run a Wasm container	185
Clean up	186
Chapter summary	186
13: Docker Networking	188
Docker Networking – The TLDR	189
Docker networking theory	189
Single-host bridge networks	193
External access via port mappings	200
Docker Networking – The Commands	214
14: Docker overlay networking	216

CONTENTS

Docker overlay networking – The TLDR	216
Docker overlay networking history	216
Building and testing Docker overlay networks	217
Overlay networks explained	224
Docker overlay networking – The commands	229
15: Volumes and persistent data	231
Volumes and persistent data – The TLDR	231
Containers without volumes	232
Containers with volumes	233
Volumes and persistent data – The Commands	240
16: Docker security	242
Docker security – The TLDR	242
Kernel Namespaces	243
Control Groups	246
Capabilities	246
Mandatory Access Control systems	247
seccomp	247
Docker security technologies	248
Swarm security	248
Docker Scout and vulnerability scanning	255
Signing and verifying images with Docker Content Trust	258
Docker Secrets	261
What next	264
Terminology	266
Index	273

0: About the book

This is a book about Docker and containers; no prior knowledge required! In fact, the book's motto is **Zero to Docker in a single book**.

So, if you want to work with cloud and cloud-native technologies, this book is dedicated to you.

Why should I read this book or care about Docker?

Docker is here, and it's changed the world. If you want the best jobs working with the best technologies, you need to know Docker and containers. They're even central to Kubernetes, and a strong Docker skill set will help you learn Kubernetes. Docker and containers are also well-positioned for emerging cloud technologies such as WebAssembly and AI workloads.

What if I'm not a developer

Most applications, even modern cloud-native microservices, need high-performance production-grade infrastructure. If you think traditional developers will take care of this, think again. To cut a long story short, if you want to thrive in the modern cloud-first world, you must know Docker. But don't stress, this book will give you all the skills you need.

How I've organized the book

I've divided the book into two main sections:

1. The big picture stuff
2. The technical stuff

The big picture stuff gets you up to speed with things like what Docker is, why we have containers, and the fundamental jargon such as *cloud-native*, *microservices*, and *orchestration*.

The technical stuff section covers everything you need to know about *images*, *containers*, *multi-container microservices apps*, and the increasingly important topic of *orchestration*. It even covers WebAssembly, vulnerability scanning with Docker Scout, debugging containers, high availability, and more.

Chapter breakdown

- **Chapter 1:** Summarises the history and potential future of Docker and containers
- **Chapter 2:** Explains the most important container-related standards and projects
- **Chapter 3:** Shows you a few ways to get Docker
- **Chapter 4:** Walks you through a very simple hands-on container workflow
- **Chapter 5:** Explains the architecture of the Docker Engine
- **Chapter 6:** Dives deep into images and image management
- **Chapter 7:** Dives deep into containers and container management
- **Chapter 8:** Walks you through the process of containerizing an app
- **Chapter 9:** Shows you how to build, deploy, and manage multi-container apps with Compose
- **Chapter 10:** Walks you through building a secure swarm
- **Chapter 11:** Deploys and manages a multi-container app on a secure swarm
- **Chapter 12:** Walks you through building and containerizing a WebAssembly app
- **Chapter 13:** Dives into Docker networking
- **Chapter 14:** Builds and tests Docker overlay networks
- **Chapter 15:** Introduces you to persistent and non-persistent data in Docker
- **Chapter 16:** Covers all the major Linux and Docker security technologies

Editions and updates

Docker and the cloud-native ecosystem are evolving fast, and a 2-3-year-old book on Docker isn't valuable. As a result, I'm committed to updating the book every year.

If that sounds excessive, welcome to the new normal.

The book is available in hardback, paperback, and e-book on all good book publishing platforms.

When you purchase the Kindle edition, you're entitled to all future updates. However, Kindle doesn't always download the latest edition.

A potential solution is to go to <http://amzn.to/2l53jdg> and choose **Quick Solutions**. Then select **Digital Purchases**, search for your Docker Deep Dive Kindle edition purchase, and select **Content and Devices**. Your purchase should appear in the list with a button that says **Update Available**. Click that button. Delete your old version on your Kindle and download the new one.

If this doesn't work, your only option is to contact Kindle Support.

Feedback

If you like the book and it helps your career, share the love by recommending it to a friend and leaving a review on Amazon or Goodreads.

If you spot a typo or want to make a recommendation, email me at ddd@nigelpoulton.com.
That's everything. Let's get rocking with Docker!

Part 1: The big picture stuff

1: Containers from 30,000 feet

Containers have taken over the world!

In this chapter, you'll learn why we have containers, what they do for us, and where we can use them.

The bad old days

Applications are the powerhouse of every modern business. When applications break, businesses break.

Most applications run on servers, and in the past, we were limited to running one application per server. As a result, the story went something like this:

Every time a business needed a new application, it had to buy a new server. Unfortunately, we weren't very good at modeling the performance requirements of new applications, and the IT departments had to guess. This often resulted in businesses buying very expensive servers with a lot more performance capability than the apps needed. After all, nobody wanted underpowered servers incapable of handling the app, resulting in unhappy customers and lost revenue. As a result, companies ended up with racks and racks of overpowered servers operating as low as 5-10% of their potential capacity. This was a tragic waste of company capital and environmental resources!

Hello VMware!

Amid all this, VMware, Inc. gave the world a gift — the *virtual machine* (VM).

As soon as VMware came along, the world became much better. We finally had a technology that allowed us to safely run multiple business applications on a single server.

It was a game-changer. Businesses could run new apps on the spare capacity of existing servers, spawning a golden age of maximizing the value of existing assets.

VMwarts

But, and there's always a *but!* As great as VMs are, they're far from perfect.

A feature of the VM model is every VM needing its own dedicated operating system (OS). Unfortunately, this has several drawbacks, including:

- Every OS consumes CPU, RAM, and other resources we'd rather use on applications
- Every VM and OS needs patching
- Every VM and OS needs monitoring

VMs are also slow to boot and not very portable.

Hello Containers!

While most of us were reaping the benefits of VMs, web scalers like Google had already moved on from VMs and were using containers.

A feature of the container model is that every container shares the OS of the host it's running on. This means a single host can run more containers than VMs. For example, a host that can run 10 VMs might be able to run 50 containers, making containers far more efficient than VMs.

Containers are also faster and more portable than VMs.

Linux containers

Modern containers started in the Linux world and are the product of incredible work from many people over many years. For example, Google contributed many container-related technologies to the Linux kernel. It's thanks to many contributions like these that we have containers today.

Some of the major technologies behind modern containers include; *kernel namespaces*, *control groups (cgroups)*, *capabilities*, and more.

However, despite all this great work, containers were incredibly complicated, and it wasn't until Docker came along that they became accessible to the masses.

Note: I know that many container-like technologies pre-date Docker and modern containers. However, none of them changed the world the way Docker has.

Hello Docker!

Docker was the magic that made Linux containers easy and brought them to the masses. We'll talk a lot more about Docker in the next chapter.

Docker and Windows

Microsoft worked hard to bring Docker and container technologies to the Windows platform.

At the time of writing, Windows desktop and server platforms support both of the following:

- Windows containers
- Linux containers

Windows containers run Windows apps and require a host system with a Windows kernel. Windows 10, Windows 11, and all modern versions of Windows Server natively support Windows containers.

Windows systems can also run Linux containers via the *WSL 2 (Windows Subsystem for Linux)* subsystem.

This means Windows 10 and Windows 11 are great platforms for developing and testing Windows **and** Linux containers.

However, despite all the work developing *Windows containers*, almost all containers are Linux containers. This is because Linux containers are smaller and faster, and more tooling exists for Linux.

All of the examples in this edition of the book are Linux containers.

Windows containers vs Linux containers

It's vital to understand that containers share the kernel of the host they're running on. This means containerized Windows apps need a host with a Windows kernel, whereas containerized Linux apps need a host with a Linux kernel. However, as mentioned, you can run Linux containers on Windows systems that have the WSL 2 backend installed.

What about Mac containers?

There is no such thing as Mac containers. However, Macs are great platforms for working with containers, and I do all of my daily work with containers on a Mac.

The most popular way of working with containers on a Mac is *Docker Desktop*. It works by running Docker inside a lightweight Linux VM on your Mac. Other tools, such as Podman and Rancher Desktop, are also great for working with containers on a Mac.

What about WebAssembly

WebAssembly (Wasm) is a modern binary instruction set that builds applications that are smaller, faster, more secure, and more portable than containers. You write your app in your favorite language and compile it as a Wasm binary, and it'll run anywhere you have a Wasm runtime.

However, Wasm apps have many limitations, and we're still developing many of the standards. As a result, containers remain the dominant model for cloud-native applications.

The container ecosystem is also much richer and more mature than the Wasm ecosystem.

As you'll see in the Wasm chapter, Docker and the container ecosystem are adapting to work with Wasm apps, and you should expect a future where VMs, containers, and Wasm apps run side-by-side in most clouds and applications.

This book is up-to-date with the latest Wasm and container developments.

What about Kubernetes

Kubernetes is the industry standard platform for deploying and managing containerized apps.

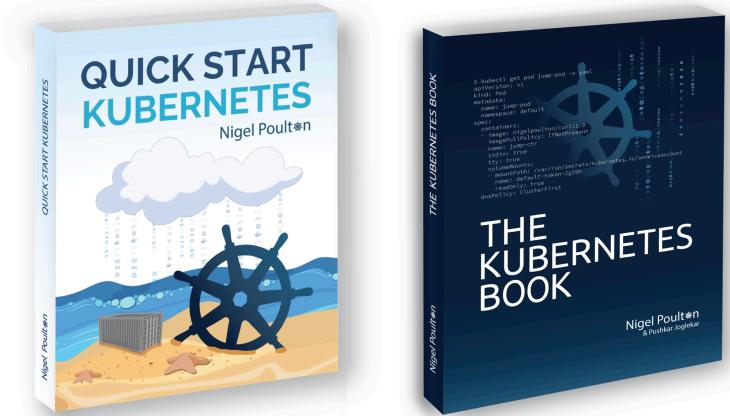
Terminology: A *containerized app* is an application running as a container. We'll cover this in a lot of detail later.

Older versions of Kubernetes used Docker to start and stop containers. However, newer versions use *containerd*, which is a stripped-down version of Docker optimized for use by Kubernetes and other platforms.

The important thing to know is that all Docker containers work on Kubernetes.

Check out these resources if you need to learn Kubernetes:

- **Quick Start Kubernetes:** This is ~100 pages and will get you up-to-speed with Kubernetes in **one day!**
- **The Kubernetes Book.** This is the ultimate book for mastering Kubernetes.



★★★★★ 100+ ratings

★★★★★ 1,300+ ratings

I update both books annually to ensure they're up-to-date with the latest and greatest developments in the cloud native ecosystem, including WebAssembly.

Chapter Summary

We used to live in a world where every time the business needed a new application, we had to buy a brand-new server. VMware came along and allowed us to drive more value out of new and existing servers. However, following the success of VMware and hypervisors came a newer, more efficient, and portable virtualization technology called *containers*. However, containers were complex and hard to implement until Docker came along and made them easy. WebAssembly is powering a third wave of cloud computing, but Docker and the container ecosystem are evolving to work with WebAssembly, and the book has an entire chapter dedicated to Docker and WebAssembly.

2: Docker and container-related standards and projects

This chapter introduces you to Docker and some of the most important standards and projects shaping the container ecosystem. The goal is to lay some foundations that we'll build on in later chapters.

This chapter has two main parts:

- Docker
- Container-related standards and projects

Docker

Docker is at the heart of the container ecosystem. However, the term *Docker* can mean two things:

1. The Docker platform
2. Docker, Inc.

The *Docker platform* is a neatly packaged collection of technologies for creating, managing, and orchestrating containers. *Docker, Inc.* is the company that created the Docker platform and continues to be the driving force behind developing new features.

Let's dive a bit deeper.

Docker, Inc.

Docker, Inc. is a technology company based out of Palo Alto and founded by French-born American developer and entrepreneur Solomon Hykes. Solomon is no longer at the company.

The company started as a *platform as a service (PaaS)* provider called *dotCloud*. Behind the scenes, dotCloud delivered their services on top of containers and had an in-house tool to help them deploy and manage those containers. They called this in-house tool *Docker*.

The word *Docker* is a British expression meaning dock work____er____ that refers to a person who loads and unloads cargo from ships.

In 2013, dotCloud dropped the struggling PaaS side of the business, rebranded as **Docker, Inc.**, and focussed on bringing Docker and containers to the world.

The Docker technology

The Docker platform is designed to make it as easy as possible to *build*, *ship*, and *run* containers.

At a high level, there are two major parts to the Docker platform:

- The CLI (client)
- The engine (server)

The *CLI* is the familiar **docker** command-line tool for deploying and managing containers. It converts simple commands into API requests and sends them to the engine.

The *engine* comprises all the server-side components that run and manage containers.

Figure 2.1 shows the high-level architecture. The client and engine can be on the same host or connected over the network.

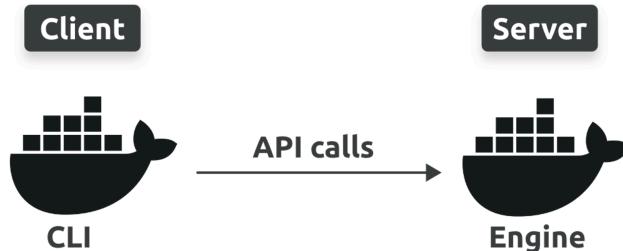


Figure 2.1 Docker client and engine.

In later chapters, you'll see that the client and engine are complex and comprise a lot of small specialized parts. Figure 2.2 gives you an idea of some of the complexity behind the engine. However, the client hides all this complexity so you don't have to care. For example, you type friendly **docker** commands into the CLI, the CLI converts them to API requests and sends them to the daemon, and the daemon takes care of everything else.

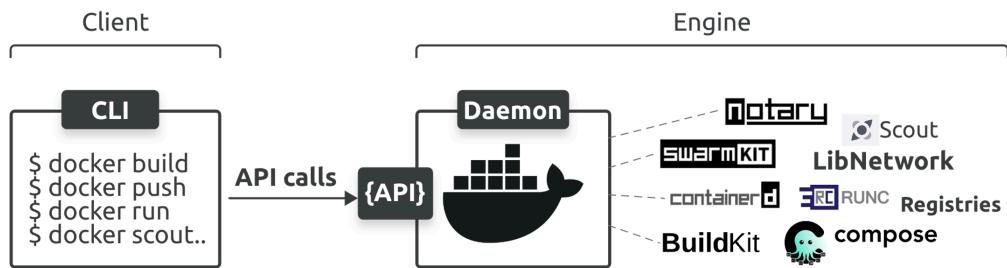


Figure 2.2 Docker CLI and daemon hiding complexity.

Let's switch focus and briefly look at some standards and governance bodies.

Container-related standards and projects

There are several important standards and governance bodies influencing the development of containers and the container ecosystem. Some of these include:

- The OCI
- The CNCF
- The Moby Project

The Open Container Initiative (OCI)

The [Open Container Initiative \(OCI\)¹](https://www.opencontainers.org) is a governance council responsible for low-level container-related standards.

It operates under the umbrella of the [Linux Foundation²](https://www.linuxfoundation.org/projects) and was founded in the early days of the container ecosystem when some of the people at a company called CoreOS didn't like the way Docker was dominating the ecosystem. In response, CoreOS created an open standard called [appc³](#) that defined specifications for things such as image format and container runtime. They also created a reference implementation called [rkt](#) (pronounced “rocket”).

The appc standard did things differently from Docker and put the ecosystem in an awkward position with two competing *standards*.

While competition is usually a good thing, *competing standards* are generally bad, as they generate confusion that slows down user adoption. Fortunately, the main players in the

¹<https://www.opencontainers.org>

²<https://www.linuxfoundation.org/projects>

³<https://github.com/appc/spec/>

ecosystem came together and formed the OCI as a vendor-neutral lightweight council to govern container standards. This allowed us to archive the appc project and place all low-level container-related specifications under the OCI's governance.

At the time of writing, the OCI maintains three standards called *specs*:

- The [image-spec⁴](#)
- The [runtime-spec⁵](#)
- The [distribution-spec⁶](#)

We often use a *rail tracks* analogy when explaining the OCI standards:

When the size and properties of rail tracks were standardized, it gave entrepreneurs in the rail industry confidence the trains, carriages, signaling systems, platforms, and other rail infrastructure they built would work with the standardized tracks — nobody wanted competing standards for track sizes.

The OCI specifications did the same thing for the container ecosystem and it's flourished ever since. Docker has also changed a lot since the formation of the OCI, and all modern versions of Docker implement all three OCI specs. For example:

- The Docker builder (BuildKit) creates *OCI compliant-images*
- Docker uses an *OCI-compliant runtime* to create *OCI-compliant containers*
- Docker Hub implements the OCI distribution spec and is an *OCI-compliant registry*

Docker, Inc. and many other companies have people on the technical oversight board (TOB) of the OCI.

The CloudNative Computing Foundation (CNCF)

The [Cloud Native Computing Foundation \(CNCF\)⁷](#) is another Linux Foundation project that is influential in the container ecosystem. It was founded in 2015 with the goal of "...advancing container technologies... and making cloud native computing ubiquitous".

Instead of creating and maintaining container-related specifications, the CNCF *hosts* important projects such as Kubernetes, containerd, Notary, Prometheus, Cilium, and lots more.

When we say the CNCF *hosts* these projects, we mean it provides a space, structure, and support for projects to grow and mature. For example, all CNCF projects pass through the following three phases or stages:

⁴<https://github.com/opencontainers/image-spec>

⁵<https://github.com/opencontainers/runtime-spec>

⁶<https://github.com/opencontainers/distribution-spec>

⁷<https://www.cncf.io/>

- Sandbox
- Incubating
- Graduated

Each phase increases a project's maturity level by requiring higher standards of governance, documentation, auditing, contribution tracking, marketing, community engagement, and more. For example, new projects accepted as sandbox projects may have great ideas and great technology but need help and resources to create strong governance, etc. The CNCF helps with all of that.

Graduated projects are considered *ready for production* and are guaranteed to have strong governance and implement good practices.

If you look back to Figure 2.2, you'll see that Docker uses at least two CNCF technologies — containerd and Notary.

The Moby Project

Docker created the *Moby project* as a community-led place for developers to build specialized tools for building container platforms.

Platform builders can pick the specific Moby tools they need to build their container platform. They can even compose their platforms from a mix of Moby tools, in-house tools, and tools from other projects.

Docker, Inc. originally created the Moby project, but it now has members including Microsoft, Mirantis, and Nvidia.

The Docker platform is built using tools from various projects, including the Moby project, the CNCF, and the OCI.

Chapter summary

This chapter introduced you to Docker and some of the major influences in the container ecosystem.

Docker, Inc., is a technology company based in Palo Alto that is changing how we do software. They were the *first movers* and instigators of the modern container revolution.

The Docker platform focuses on running and managing application containers. It runs on Linux and Windows, can be installed almost anywhere, and offers a variety of free and paid-for products.

The Open Container Initiative (OCI) governs low-level container standards and maintains specifications for runtimes, image format, and registries.

The CNCF hosts important cloud-native projects and helps them mature into production-grade tools.

The Moby project hosts low-level tools developers can use to build container platforms.

3: Getting Docker

There are lots of ways to get Docker and work with containers. This chapter will show you the following ways:

- Docker Desktop
- Multipass
- Server installs on Linux

Docker Desktop is the best way to work with Docker and gets you the complete Docker experience on your laptop with all the latest tools, plugins, and extensions. I use it every day, and I recommend it to everyone.

We'll also show you how to install Docker on your laptop with Multipass and a super-simple Linux installation. However, you should only consider these if you can't use Docker Desktop, as they offer fewer features.

Docker Desktop

Docker Desktop is a desktop app from Docker, Inc. and is the best way to work with containers. You get the Docker Engine, a slick UI, all the latest plugins and features, and an extension system with a marketplace. You even get Docker Compose and a single-node Kubernetes cluster if you want to learn Kubernetes.

It's free for personal use and education, but you'll have to pay a license fee if you use it for work and your company has over 250 employees or does more than \$10M in annual revenue.

Docker Desktop on Windows 10 and Windows 11 Professional and Enterprise editions supports *Windows containers* **and** *Linux containers*. Docker Desktop on Mac, Linux, and Home editions of Windows only support *Linux containers*. All of the examples in the book and almost all of the containers in the real world are Linux containers.

Let's install Docker Desktop on Windows and MacOS.

Windows prereqs

Docker Desktop on Windows requires all of the following:

- 64-bit version of Windows 10/11
- Hardware virtualization support must be enabled in your system's BIOS
- WSL 2

Be very careful changing anything in your system's BIOS.

Installing Docker Desktop on Windows 10 and 11

Search the internet for _“install Docker Desktop on Windows”. This will take you to the relevant download page, where you can download the installer and follow the instructions. When prompted, you should install and enable the WSL 2 backend (Windows Subsystem for Linux).

Once the installation is complete, you need to manually start Docker Desktop from the Windows Start menu. It may take a minute to start, but you can watch the start progress via the animated whale icon on the Windows taskbar at the bottom of the screen.

Once it's running, you can open a terminal and type some simple **docker** commands.

```
$ docker version
<Snip>
Server: Docker Desktop 4.30.0 (149282)
Engine:
  Version:      26.1.1
  API version:  1.45 (minimum version 1.24)
  Go version:   go1.21.9
  Built:        Tue Apr 30 11:48:28 2024
  OS/Arch:      linux/amd64
<Snip>
```

Notice how the **Server** output shows **OS/Arch: linux/amd64**. This is because a default installation assumes you'll be working with Linux containers.

Some versions of Windows let you switch to *Windows containers* by right-clicking the Docker whale icon in the Windows notifications tray and selecting **Switch to Windows containers....** Doing this keeps existing Linux containers running in the background, but you won't be able to see or manage them until you switch back to Linux containers mode.

Congratulations. You now have a working installation of Docker on your Windows machine.

Make sure you're running in *Linux containers mode* so you can follow along with the examples later in the book.

Installing Docker Desktop on Mac

Docker Desktop for Mac is like Docker Desktop for Windows — a packaged product with a slick UI that gets you the full Docker experience on your laptop. You can also enable the built-in single-node Kubernetes cluster.

Before proceeding with the installation, you need to know that Docker Desktop on Mac installs the daemon and server-side components inside a lightweight Linux VM that seamlessly exposes the API to your local Mac environment. This means you can open a terminal on your Mac and run `docker` commands without ever knowing it's all running in a hidden VM. This is also why Mac versions of Docker Desktop only work with Linux containers — everything's running inside a Linux VM.

Figure 3.1 shows the high-level architecture for Docker Desktop on Mac.

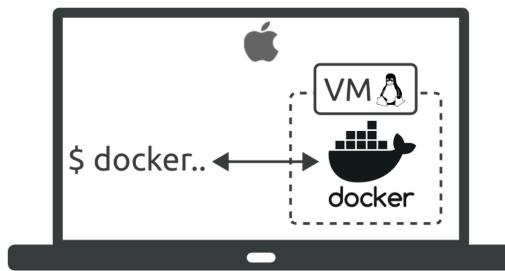


Figure 3.1

The simplest way to install Docker Desktop on your Mac is to search the web for “*install Docker Desktop on MacOS*”, follow the links to the download, and then complete the simple installer.

When the installer finishes, you'll have to start Docker Desktop from the MacOS Launchpad manually. It may take a minute to start, but you can watch the animated Docker whale icon in the status bar at the top of your screen. Once it's started, you can click the whale icon to manage Docker Desktop.

Open a terminal window and run some regular Docker commands. Try the following.

```
$ docker version
Client:
  Cloud integration: v1.0.35+desktop.13
  Version:          26.1.1
  API version:      1.45
  OS/Arch:          darwin/arm64
<Snip>
Server: Docker Desktop 4.30.0 (149282)
  Engine:
    Version:        26.1.1
    API version:   1.45 (minimum version 1.24)
    OS/Arch:        linux/arm64
  containerd:
    Version:        1.6.31
  runc:
    Version:        1.1.12
  docker-init:
    Version:        0.19.0
<Snip>
```

Notice that the **OS/Arch:** for the **Server** component shows as **linux/amd64** or **linux/arm64**. This is because the daemon runs inside the Linux VM mentioned earlier. The **Client** component is a native Mac application and runs directly on the Mac OS Darwin kernel. This is why it shows as **darwin/amd64** or **darwin/arm64**.

You can now use Docker on your Mac.

Installing Docker with Multipass

Only consider this section if you can't use Docker Desktop, as Multipass installations don't ship with out of the box support for **docker scout**, **docker debug**, or **docker init**.

Multipass is a free tool for creating cloud-style Linux VMs on your Linux, Mac, or Windows machine and is incredibly easy to install and use. It's an easy way to create multi-node production-like Docker clusters.

Go to <https://multipass.run/install> and install the right edition for your hardware and OS.

Once installed, you only need three commands:

```
$ multipass launch
$ multipass ls
$ multipass shell
```

Let's see how to launch and connect to a new VM with Docker pre-installed.

Run the following command to create a new VM called **node1** based on the **docker** image. The docker image has Docker pre-installed and ready to go.

```
$ multipass launch docker --name node1
```

It'll take a minute or two to download the image and launch the VM.

List VMs to make sure yours launched properly.

```
$ multipass ls
```

Name	State	IPv4	Image
node1	Running	192.168.64.37	Ubuntu 22.04 LTS
		172.17.0.1	
		172.18.0.1	

You'll use the 192 IP address when working with the examples later in the book.

Connect to the VM with the following command.

```
$ multipass shell node1
```

Once connected, you can run the following commands to check your Docker version and list installed CLI plugins.

```
$ docker --version
Docker version 26.1.0, build 9714adc

$ docker info
Client: Docker Engine - Community
  Version: 26.1.0
  Context: default
  Debug Mode: false
  Plugins:
    buildx: Docker Buildx (Docker Inc.)
      Version: v0.14.0
      Path: /usr/libexec/docker/cli-plugins/docker-buildx
    compose: Docker Compose (Docker Inc.)
      Version: v2.26.1
      Path: /usr/libexec/docker/cli-plugins/docker-compose
<Snip>
```

The installation in the example only has the **buildx** and **compose** CLI plugins. You'll have to manually install the relevant plugins if you want to follow the Docker Scout, Docker Init, and Docker Debug examples later in the book.

You can type **exit** to log out of the VM, and **multipass shell node1** to log back in. You can also type **multipass delete node1** and then **multipass purge** to delete it.

Installing Docker on Linux

Only consider this section if you can't use Docker Desktop. This installation doesn't install the **docker scout**, **docker debug**, or **docker init** CLI plugins that we'll use in some of the later chapters.

These instructions show you how to install Docker on Ubuntu Linux 22.04 and are just for guidance purposes. Lots of other installation methods exist, and you should search the web for the latest instructions.

```
$ sudo snap install docker
docker 24.0.5 from Canonical ✓ installed
```

Run some commands to test the installation. You'll have to prefix them with **sudo**.

```
$ sudo docker --version
Docker version 24.0.5, build ced0996

$ sudo docker info
<Snip>
Server:
Containers: 0
Running: 0
Paused: 0
Stopped: 0
Images: 0
Server Version: 24.0.5
<Snip>
```

Chapter Summary

You can run Docker almost anywhere, and installing it's easier than ever.

Docker Desktop gives you a fully functional Docker environment on your Linux, Mac, or Windows machine and is the best way to get a Docker development environment on your local machine. It's easy to install, includes the Docker Engine, has a slick UI, and has a marketplace with lots of extensions to extend its capabilities. It works with **docker scout**, **docker debug**, and **docker init**, and it even lets you spin up a single-node Kubernetes cluster.

Multipass is a great way to spin up a local VM running Docker, and there are lots of ways to install Docker on Linux servers. These give you access to most of the free Docker features but lack some of the features of Docker Desktop.

4: The big picture

This chapter will give you some hands-on experience and a high-level view of images and containers. The goal is to prepare you for more detail in the upcoming chapters.

We'll break this chapter into two parts:

- The Ops perspective
- The Dev perspective

The ops perspective focuses on starting, stopping, deleting containers, and executing commands inside them.

The dev perspective focuses more on the application side of things and runs through taking application source code, building it into a container image, and running it as a container.

I recommend you read both sections and follow the examples, as this will give you the *dev* and *ops* perspectives. *DevOps* anyone?

The Ops Perspective

In this section, you'll complete all of the following:

- Check Docker is working
- Download an image
- Start a container from the image
- Execute a command inside the container
- Delete the container

A typical Docker installation installs the client and the engine on the same machine and configures them to talk to each other.

Run a **docker version** command to ensure both are installed and running.

```
$ docker version
Client:
  Cloud integration: v1.0.35+desktop.13
  Version:          26.1.1
  API version:      1.45
  Go version:       go1.21.9
  OS/Arch:          darwin/arm64
  Context:          desktop-linux
                    -----> Start of client response
                    -----> Client info block

Server: Docker Desktop 4.30.0 (149282)
Engine:
  Version:          26.1.1
  API version:      1.45 (minimum version 1.24)
  Go version:       go1.21.9
  OS/Arch:          linux/arm64
  containerd:       1.6.31
  Version:          1.6.31
  runc:             1.1.12
  docker-init:      0.19.0
                    -----> Start of server response
                    -----> Server block
```

If your response from the client **and** server looks like the output in the book, everything is working as expected.

If you're on Linux and get a **permission denied while trying to connect to the Docker daemon...** error, try again with **sudo** in front of the command — **sudo docker version**. If it works with **sudo**, you'll need to prefix **all** future **docker** commands with **sudo**.

Download an image

Images are objects that contain everything an app needs to run. This includes an OS filesystem, the application, and all dependencies. If you work in operations, they're similar to VM templates. If you're a developer, they're similar to *classes*.

Run a **docker images** command.

\$ docker images				
REPOSITORY	TAG	IMAGE ID	CREATED	SIZE

If you are working from a clean installation, you'll have no images, and your output will be the same as the book. If you're working with Multipass, you might see an image called **protainer/protainer-ce**.

Copying new images onto your Docker host is called *pulling*. Pull the **ubuntu:latest** image.

```
$ docker pull ubuntu:latest
latest: Pulling from library/ubuntu
b91d8878f844: Download complete
Digest: sha256:e9569c25505f33ff72e88b2990887c9dcf230f23259da296eb814fc2b41af999
Status: Downloaded newer image for ubuntu:latest
docker.io/library/ubuntu:latest
```

Run another **docker images** to confirm your *pull* command worked.

```
$ docker images
REPOSITORY      TAG      IMAGE ID      CREATED      SIZE
ubuntu          latest   e9569c25505f   10 days ago   106MB
```

We'll discuss the details of where the image is stored and what's inside it in later chapters. For now, all you need to know is that images contain enough of an operating system (OS) and all the code and dependencies required to run the application. The Ubuntu image you pulled includes a stripped-down version of the Ubuntu Linux filesystem and a few of the standard Linux utilities that ship with Ubuntu.

If you pull an *application container*, such as **nginx:latest**, you'll get an image with a minimal OS **and** the code to run the NGINX app.

Start a container from the image

If you've been following along, you'll have a copy of the **ubuntu:latest** image on your Docker host, and you can use the **docker run** command to start a container from it.

Run the following **docker run** command to start a new container called **test** from the **ubuntu:latest** image.

```
$ docker run --name test -it ubuntu:latest bash
root@bbd2e5ad1817:/#
```

Notice how your shell prompt has changed. This is because the container is already running and your shell is attached to it.

Let's quickly examine that **docker run** command.

docker run tells Docker to start a new container. The **--name** flag told Docker to call this container **test**. Next, the **-it** flags told Docker to make the container interactive and to attach your shell to the container's terminal. After that, the command told Docker to base the container on the **ubuntu:latest** image. Finally, it told Docker to start a Bash shell as the container's main app.

Run a **ps** command from inside the container to list all running processes.

```
root@bbd2e5ad1817:/# ps -elf
F S UID      PID  PPID  NI ADDR SZ WCHAN  STIME TTY          TIME CMD
4 S root      1      0      0 -  4560 -        13:38 pts/0    00:00:00 /bin/bash
0 R root      9      1      0 -  8606 -        13:38 pts/0    00:00:00 ps -elf
```

There are only two processes:

- PID 1 is the Bash process that we told the container to run
- PID 9 is the **ps -elf** command we ran to list the running processes

The presence of the **ps -elf** process in the output can be a bit misleading as it is a short-lived process that exits as soon as the **ps** command completes. This means the only long-running process inside the container is the **/bin/bash** process.

Press **Ctrl-PQ** to exit the container without terminating it. This will land your shell back at your local terminal, and your shell prompt will revert.

Run the following command to verify your **test** container is still running.

```
$ docker ps
CONTAINER ID   IMAGE      COMMAND      CREATED     STATUS      NAMES
bbd2e5ad1817   ubuntu:latest "/bin/bash"  7 mins ago  Up 7 min  test
```

The output shows your **test** container, and you can see it was created 7 minutes ago and has been running for 7 minutes.

Execute a command inside the container

You can use the **docker attach** command to attach your shell to the container's main process.

Run the following command to attach your shell to the Bash process inside the container.

```
$ docker attach test
root@bbd2e5ad1817:/#
```

Make sure your shell prompt changes, indicating you successfully connected to the container.

Exit the container again by typing **Ctrl-PQ** and verify your shell prompt reverts to your local machine.

Delete the container

Run another **docker ps** to verify your container is still running.

```
$ docker ps
CONTAINER ID        IMAGE           COMMAND       CREATED      STATUS      NAMES
bbd2e5ad1817        ubuntu:latest   "/bin/bash"   9 mins ago   Up 9 min   test
```

Stop and kill the container using the **docker stop** and **docker rm** commands.

```
$ docker stop test
test
```

It can take a few seconds for the container to stop.

```
$ docker rm test
test
```

Verify the container was successfully deleted by running the **docker ps** command with the **-a** flag to list all containers, even those in the stopped state.

```
$ docker ps -a
CONTAINER ID        IMAGE           COMMAND       CREATED      STATUS      PORTS      NAMES
```

Congratulations, you've pulled a Docker image, started a container from it, logged in to it, executed a command inside it, stopped it, and deleted it.

The Dev Perspective

Containers are all about applications.

You'll complete all of the following steps in this section:

- Clone an app from a GitHub repo
- Inspect the app's *Dockerfile*
- *Containerize* the app
- Run the app as a container

Run the following command to make a local clone of the repo. This will copy the application code to your machine so you can containerize it in a future step. You'll need the **git** CLI for this to work.

```
$ git clone https://github.com/nigelpoulton/psweb.git
Cloning into 'psweb'...
remote: Enumerating objects: 63, done.
remote: Counting objects: 100% (34/34), done.
remote: Compressing objects: 100% (22/22), done.
remote: Total 63 (delta 13), reused 25 (delta 9), pack-reused 29
Receiving objects: 100% (63/63), 13.29 KiB | 4.43 MiB/s, done.
Resolving deltas: 100% (21/21), done.
```

Change into the **psweb** directory and list its contents.

```
$ cd psweb
$ ls -l
total 32
-rw-r--r--@ 1 nigelpoulton  staff  324  5 Feb 12:31 Dockerfile
-rw-r--r--  1 nigelpoulton  staff  378  5 Feb 12:31 README.md
-rw-r--r--  1 nigelpoulton  staff  341  5 Feb 12:31 app.js
-rw-r--r--@ 1 nigelpoulton  staff  355  5 Feb 12:47 package.json
drwxr-xr-x  3 nigelpoulton  staff   96  5 Feb 12:31 views
```

The app is a simple Node.js web app running some static HTML.

Inspect the app's Dockerfile

The *Dockerfile* is a plain-text document that tells Docker how to build the app and dependencies into an image.

List the contents of the application's Dockerfile.

```
$ cat Dockerfile
FROM alpine
LABEL maintainer="nigelpoulton@hotmail.com"
RUN apk add --update nodejs npm curl
COPY . /src
WORKDIR /src
RUN npm install
EXPOSE 8080
ENTRYPOINT ["node", "./app.js"]
```

You'll learn more about Dockerfiles later in the book. Right now, all you need to know is that each line represents an instruction Docker executes to build the app into an image.

If you've been following along, you've pulled some application code from a remote Git repo and looked at the application's Dockerfile.

Containerize the app

Run the following **docker build** command to create a new image based on the instructions in the Dockerfile. It will create a new Docker image called **test:latest**.

Be sure to run the command from within the **psweb** directory.

```
$ docker build -t test:latest .
[+] Building 36.2s (11/11) FINISHED
=> [internal] load .dockerignore
=> => transferring context: 2B
=> [internal] load build definition from Dockerfile
<Snip>
=> => naming to docker.io/library/test:latest
=> => unpacking to docker.io/library/test:latest
```

Once the build is complete, check that you have an image called **test:latest**.

```
$ docker images
REPO      TAG      IMAGE ID      CREATED      SIZE
test      latest    0435f2738cf6  21 seconds ago  160MB
```

Congratulations, you've *containerized* the app. That's jargon for building it into a container image that contains the app and dependencies.

Run the app as a container

Run the following command to start a container called **web1** from the image. If you're on a Windows machine, you'll need to replace the backslashes with backticks or run the command on a single line without the backslashes.

```
$ docker run -d \
--name web1 \
--publish 8080:8080 \
test:latest
```

Open a web browser and navigate to the DNS name or IP address of your Docker host on port 8080. If you're following along on Docker Desktop, connect to `localhost:8080` or `127.0.0.1:8080`. If you're following along on Multipass, connect to your Multipass VM's 192 address on port 8080. Run an `ip a | grep 192` command from within the Multipass VM, or run a `multipass ls` from your local machine to find the address.

You will see the following web page.



Figure 4.1

Congratulations. You've copied some application code from a remote Git repo, built it into a Docker image, and run it as a container. We call this *containerizing* an app.

Clean up

Run the following commands to terminate the container and delete the image.

```
$ docker rm web1 -f  
web1  
  
$ docker rmi test:latest  
Untagged: test:latest  
Deleted: sha256:0435f27...cac8e2b
```

Chapter Summary

In the Ops section of the chapter, you downloaded a Docker image, launched a container from it, logged into the container, executed a command inside of it, and then stopped and deleted the container.

In the Dev section, you containerized a simple application by pulling source code from GitHub and building it into an image using instructions in a Dockerfile. You then ran the app as a container.

The things you've learned in this chapter will help you in the upcoming chapters.

Part 2: The technical stuff

5: The Docker Engine

In this chapter, we'll look under the hood of the Docker Engine.

This chapter has a strong *operations* focus, and you can use Docker without knowing everything you're about to learn. However, to truly master something, you need to understand what's going on under the hood. So, if you want to **master Docker**, you should read this chapter.

I've divided the chapter into the following sections:

- Docker Engine – The TLDR
- The Docker Engine
- The influence of the Open Container Initiative (OCI)
- runc
- containerd
- Starting a new container (example)
- What's the shim all about
- How it's implemented on Linux

Let's learn about the Docker Engine.

Docker Engine – The TLDR

Docker Engine is jargon for the server-side components of Docker that run and manage containers. If you've ever worked with VMware, the Docker Engine is similar to ESXi.

The Docker Engine is modular and built from many small specialized components pulled from projects such as the OCI, the CNCF, and the Moby project.

In many ways, the Docker Engine is like a car engine:

- A car engine is made from many specialized parts that work together to make a car drive — intake manifolds, throttle bodies, cylinders, pistons, spark plugs, exhaust manifolds, and more.
- The Docker Engine is made from many specialized tools that work together to create and run containers — the API, image builder, high-level runtime, low-level runtime, shims, etc.

Figure 5.1 shows the components of the Docker Engine that create and run containers. Other components exist, but this simplified diagram focuses on the components that start and run containers.

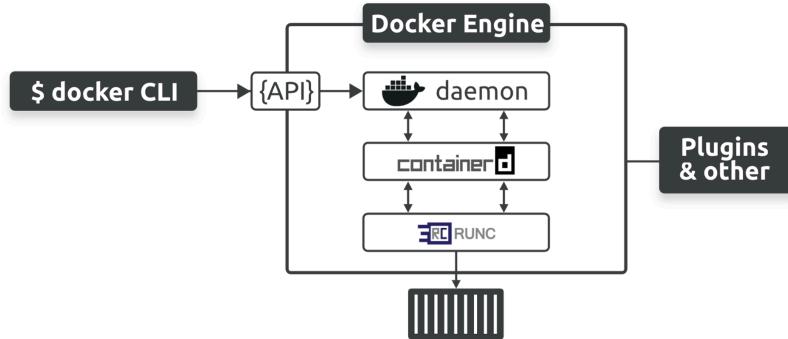


Figure 5.1

Throughout the book, we'll refer to *runc* and *containerd* with lowercase "r" and "c", which is how they're both written in the official project documentation. This means sentences starting with either *runc* or *containerd* will not begin with a capital letter.

The Docker Engine

When Docker was first released, the Docker Engine had two major components:

- The Docker daemon (sometimes referred to as just “the daemon”)
- LXC

The daemon was a monolithic binary containing all the code for the API, image builders, container execution, volumes, networking, and more.

LXC did the hard work of interfacing with the Linux kernel and constructing the required namespaces and cgroups to build and start containers.

Replacing LXC

Relying on LXC posed several problems for the Docker project.

First, LXC is Linux-specific, and Docker had aspirations of being multi-platform.

Second, Docker was evolving fast, and there was no way of ensuring LXC evolved in the ways Docker needed.

To improve the experience and help the project evolve more quickly, Docker replaced LXC with its own tool, *libcontainer*. The goal of libcontainer was to be a platform-agnostic tool that gave Docker access to the fundamental container building blocks in the host kernel.

Libcontainer replaced LXC in Docker a very long time ago.

Breaking up the monolithic Docker daemon

As previously mentioned, the Docker Engine was originally a monolith with almost all functionality coded into the *daemon*. However, as time passed, this became more and more problematic for the following reasons:

1. It got slower
2. It wasn't what the ecosystem wanted
3. It's hard to innovate on monolithic software

The project recognized these challenges and began a long-running program to break apart and refactor the Engine so that every feature became its own small specialized tool. Platform builders could then re-use these tools to build other platforms.

This work of breaking apart the Docker daemon is an ongoing process, and all of the code for building images and executing containers has been removed and refactored into small, specialized tools. Notable examples include removing the high-level and low-level runtime functionality and re-implementing them in separate tools called containerd and runc, both of which are used by many different projects including Docker, Kubernetes, Firecracker, and Fargate. More recently (starting with Docker Desktop 4.27.0), Docker has removed image management from the daemon and now uses containerd's image management capabilities.

Figure 5.2 shows another view of the main components of the Docker Engine that are used to run containers and lists the primary responsibilities of each component.

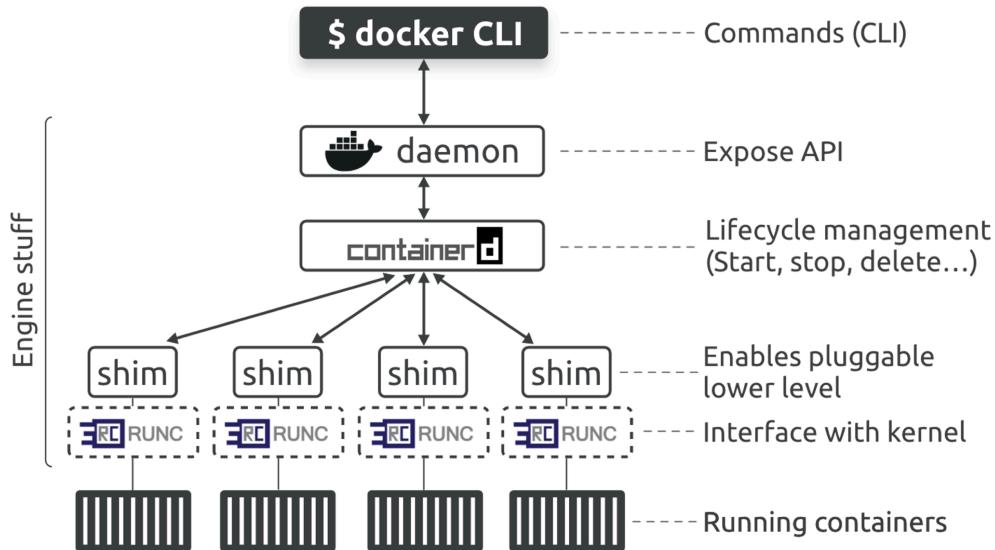


Figure 5.2 - Engine components and responsibilities

Other engine components exist.

The influence of the Open Container Initiative (OCI)

Around the same time that Docker, Inc. was refactoring the Engine, the [OCI](#)⁸ was in the process of defining two container-related standards:

1. Image Specification ([image-spec](#))⁹
2. Runtime Specification ([runtime-spec](#))¹⁰

Both specifications were released as version 1.0 in July 2017 and are still vital today.

They've even added a third specification called the Distribution Specification ([distribution-spec](#)) governing how images are distributed via registries.

At the time of writing, the runtime-spec is at version 1.1.0, the image-spec is at version 1.0.2, and the distribution-spec is at 1.0.1. However, plans are underway for version 1.1 of both the image-spec and distribution-spec. We mention this to highlight the slow-and-steady nature of these low-level specifications that are heavily relied upon by so many other projects — stability is the name of the game for low-level OCI specs.

⁸<https://www.opencontainers.org/>

⁹<https://github.com/opencontainers/image-spec>

¹⁰<https://github.com/opencontainers/runtime-spec>

Docker, Inc. was a founding member of the OCI and was heavily involved in defining the specifications. It continues to be involved by contributing code and helping guide the specifications.

All versions of Docker since 2016 have implemented the OCI specifications. For example, Docker uses *runc*, the reference implementation of the OCI runtime-spec, to create OCI-compliant containers (runtime-spec). It also uses BuildKit to build OCI-compliant images (image-spec), and Docker Hub is an OCI-compliant registry (registry-spec).

runc

As previously mentioned, *runc*¹¹ (pronounced “run see” and always written with a lowercase “r”) is the reference implementation of the OCI runtime-spec. Docker, Inc. was heavily involved in defining the spec and contributed the initial code for runc.

runc is a lightweight CLI wrapper for libcontainer that you can download and use to manage OCI-compliant containers. However, it’s a very low-level tool and lacks almost all of the features and add-ons you get with the Docker Engine. Fortunately, as previously shown in Figure 5.2, Docker uses runc as its low-level runtime. This means you get OCI-compliant containers **and** the feature-rich Docker user experience.

On the jargon front, we sometimes say that runc operates at the *OCI layer*, and we often refer to it as a *low-level runtime*.

Docker and Kubernetes both use runc as their default low-level runtime, and both pair it with the containerd high-level runtime:

- containerd operates as the high-level runtime *managing* lifecycle events
- runc operates as the low-level runtime *executing* lifecycle events by interfacing with the kernel to do the work of actually building containers and deleting them

You can see the latest releases here:

- <https://github.com/opencontainers/runc/releases>

containerd

containerd (pronounced “container dee” and always written with a lowercase “c”) is another tool that Docker created while stripping functionality out of the daemon.

¹¹<https://github.com/opencontainers/runc>

We refer to containerd as a *high-level runtime* as it *manages* lifecycle events such as starting, stopping, and deleting containers. However, it needs a low-level runtime to perform the actual work. Most of the time, containerd is paired with runc as its low-level runtime. However, as you saw in Figure 5.3, it uses *shims* that make it possible to replace runc with other low-level runtimes. We'll go into more detail in the WebAssembly chapter when you'll see how to use Docker to run WebAssembly apps.

The original plan was for containerd to be a small specialized tool for managing container lifecycle events. However, it has since grown to include the ability to manage images, networks, and volumes.

One reason for adding more functionality is for projects such as Kubernetes that want containerd to be able to push and pull images. Fortunately, this extra functionality is modular, meaning projects like Kubernetes can include containerd but only take the pieces they need.

containerd was originally developed by Docker, Inc. and donated to the Cloud Native Computing Foundation (CNCF). At the time of writing, containerd is a graduated CNCF project, meaning it's stable and production-ready. You can see the latest releases here:

- <https://github.com/containerd/containerd/releases>

Starting a new container (example)

Now that you have a view of the big picture, let's see how to use Docker to create a new container.

The most common way of starting containers is using the Docker CLI. Feel free to run the following command to start a new container called **ctr1** based on the **nginx** image.

```
$ docker run -d --name ctr1 nginx
```

Run a **docker ps** command to see if the container is running.

```
$ docker ps
CONTAINER ID   IMAGE     COMMAND          CREATED        STATUS      PORTS     NAMES
9cfb0c9aacb2   nginx     "/docker-entrypoint..."   9 seconds ago   Up 9 seconds   80/tcp    ctr1
```

When you run commands like this, the Docker client converts them into API requests and sends them to the API exposed by the daemon.

The daemon can expose the API on a local socket or over the network. On Linux, the local socket is `/var/run/docker.sock` and on Windows it's `\pipe\docker_engine`.

The daemon receives the request, interprets it as a request to create a new container, and passes it to containerd. Remember that the daemon no longer contains any code to create containers.

The daemon communicates with containerd via a CRUD-style API over gRPC¹².

Despite its name, even containerd cannot create containers. It converts the required Docker image into an *OCI bundle* and tells **runc** to use this to create a new container.

runc interfaces with the OS kernel to pull together all the constructs necessary to create a container (namespaces, cgroups, etc.). The container is started as a child process of runc, and as soon as the container starts, runc exits.

Figure 5.3 summarizes the process.

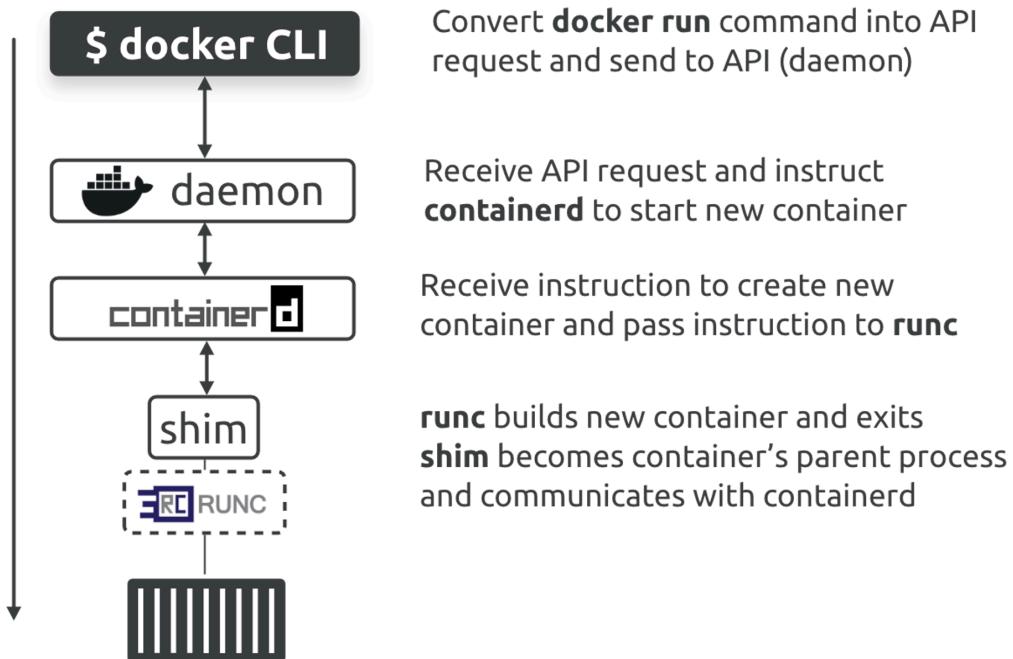


Figure 5.3

Decoupling the container creation and management from the Docker daemon and implementing it in containerd and runc makes it possible to stop, restart, and even update the daemon without impacting running containers. We sometimes call this *daemonless containers*.

¹²<https://grpc.io/>

If you started the NGINX container earlier, you should delete it using the following command.

```
$ docker rm ctr1 -f
```

What's the shim all about?

Some of the diagrams in the chapter have shown a *shim* component.

Shims are a popular software engineering pattern, and the Docker Engine uses them in between containerd and the OCI layer, bringing the following benefits:

- Daemonless containers
- Improves efficiency
- Makes the OCI layer pluggable

We've already mentioned daemonless containers.

On the efficiency front, containerd forks a shim and a runc process for every new container. However, each runc process exits as soon as the container starts running, leaving the shim process as the container's parent process. The shim is lightweight and sits between containerd and the container. It reports on the container's status and performs low-level tasks such as keeping the container's STDIN and STDOUT streams open.

Shims also make it possible to replace runc with other low-level runtimes.

How it's implemented on Linux

On a Linux system, Docker implements the components we've discussed as the following separate binaries:

- `/usr/bin/dockerd` (the Docker daemon)
- `/usr/bin/containerd`
- `/usr/bin/containerd-shim-runc-v2`
- `/usr/bin/runc`

You can see all of these on a Linux-based Docker host by running a `ps` command. Some of the processes will only be present when the system has running containers, and you can't see them if you're using Docker Desktop on a Mac because the Docker Engine is running inside a VM.

Do we still need the daemon

At the time of writing, Docker has stripped most of the functionality out of the daemon, leaving the daemon to focus on serving the API.

Chapter summary

The Docker Engine is a platform that makes it easy to build, ship, and run containers. It implements the OCI standards and is a modular app comprising many small, specialized components.

The *Docker daemon* implements the Docker API, but most other functionality has been stripped out and implemented as standalone composable tools such as `containerd` and `runc`.

`containerd` performs image management tasks and oversees container lifecycle management, such as starting, stopping, and deleting containers. Docker, Inc. originally wrote it and then contributed to the CNCF. It's classed as a high-level runtime and used by many other projects, including Kubernetes, Firecracker, and Fargate.

`containerd` relies on a low-level runtime called `runc` to interface with the host kernel and build containers. `runc` is the reference implementation of the OCI runtime-spec and expects to start containers from OCI-compliant bundles. `containerd` talks to `runc` and ensures Docker images are presented to `runc` as OCI-compliant bundles.

`runc` is based on code from `libcontainer`, you can run it as a standalone CLI tool to create containers, and it's used almost everywhere that `containerd` is used.

Shims make it possible to use `containerd` with other low-level runtimes.

6: Working with Images

In this chapter, we'll dive deep into Docker images. You'll learn what images are, how to work with them, and how they work under the hood. You'll learn how to build your own in *Chapter 8: Containerizing an application*.

I've arranged the chapter as follows:

- Docker images – The TLDR
- Intro to images
- Pulling images
- Image registries
- Image naming and tagging
- Images and layers
- Pulling images by digest
- Multi-architecture images
- Vulnerability scanning with Docker Scout
- Deleting images

Docker images – The TLDR

Before getting started, all of the following terms mean the same thing, and we'll use them interchangeably: *Image*, *Docker image*, *container image*, and *OCI image*.

An image is a read-only package containing everything you need to run an application. This means they include application code, dependencies, a minimal set of OS constructs, and metadata. You can start multiple containers from a single image.

If you're familiar with VMware, images are a bit like VM templates — a VM template is like a stopped VM, whereas an image is like a stopped container. If you're a developer, images are similar to *classes* — you can create one or more objects from a class, whereas you can create one or more containers from an image.

The easiest way to get an image is to *pull* one from a *registry*. [Docker Hub](#)¹³ is the most common registry, and *pulling* an image downloads it to your local machine where

¹³<https://hub.docker.com>

Docker can use it to start one or more containers. Other registries exist, and Docker works with them all.

Images are made by stacking independent *layers* and representing them as a single unified object. One layer might have the OS components, another layer might have application dependencies, and another layer might have the application. Docker stacks these layers and makes them look like a unified system.

Images are usually small. For example, the official NGINX image is around 60MB, and the official Redis image is around 40MB. However, Windows images can be huge.

That's the elevator pitch. Let's dig a little deeper.

Intro to images

We've already said that images are like stopped containers. You can even stop a container and create a new image from it. With this in mind, images are *build-time* constructs, whereas containers are *run-time* constructs. Figure 6.1 shows the *build* and *run* nature of each and that you can start multiple containers from a single image.

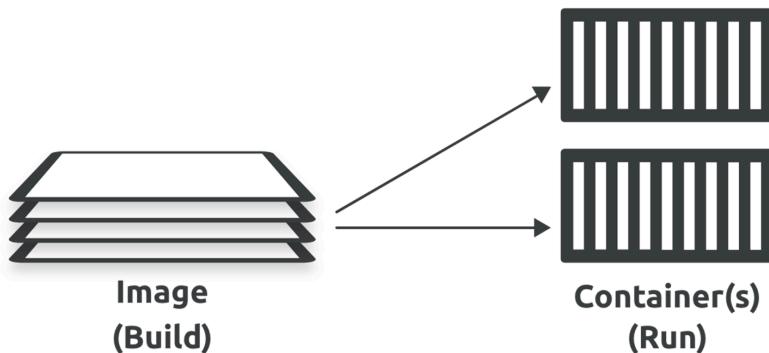


Figure 6.1

The `docker run` command is the most common way to start a container from an image. Once the container is running, the image and the container are bound, and you cannot delete the image until you stop and delete the container. If multiple containers use the same image, you can only delete the image after you've deleted all the containers using it.

Containers are designed to run a single application or microservice. As such, they should only contain application code and dependencies. You should not include non-essentials such as build tools or troubleshooting tools.

For example, the official Alpine Linux image is currently about 3MB. This is because it doesn't ship with six different shells, three different package managers, and a bunch of tools you "might" need once every ten years. In fact, it's increasingly common for images to ship without a shell or a package manager — if the application doesn't need it at runtime, the image doesn't include it. We call these *slim images*.

Another thing that keeps images small is the lack of an OS kernel. This is because containers use the kernel of the host they're running on. The only OS-related components in most images are filesystem objects, and you'll sometimes hear people say images contain *just enough OS*.

Unfortunately, Windows images can be huge. For example, some Windows-based images can be gigabytes in size and take a long time to push and pull.

Pulling images

A clean Docker installation has an empty *local repository*.

Local repository is jargon for an area on your local machine where Docker stores images for more convenient access. We sometimes call it the *image cache*, and on Linux it's usually located in `/var/lib/docker/<storage-driver>`. However, it will be inside the Docker VM if you're using Docker Desktop.

Run the following command to inspect the contents of your local repository. This example has three images relating to three Docker Desktop extensions I'm running. Yours will be different and may be empty.

```
$ docker images
REPOSITORY          TAG      IMAGE ID      CREATED       SIZE
docker/disk-usage-extension  0.2.9   f4c95478a537  26 hours ago  3.64MB
docker/logs-explorer-extension  0.2.6   417dd9a8f96d  26 hours ago  17.9MB
portainer/portainer-docker-extension  2.19.4  908d04d20e86  2 months ago  364MB
```

The process of getting images is called *pulling*.

Run the following commands to pull the **redis** image and verify it exists in your local repository.

Note: If you are following along on Linux and haven't added your user account to the local **docker** Unix group, you may need to add **sudo** to the beginning of all the following commands.

```
$ docker pull redis
Using default tag: latest
latest: Pulling from library/redis
08df40659127: Download complete
4f4fb700ef54: Already exists
4fe7fa4aab04: Download complete
57dea0f129a5: Download complete
f546e941f15b: Download complete
f7f7da262cdb: Download complete
f45ab649e450: Download complete
983f900bbc88: Download complete
Digest: sha256:76d5908f5e19fcdd73daf956a38826f790336ee4707d9028f32b24ad9ac72c08
Status: Downloaded newer image for redis:latest
docker.io/library/redis:latest      <----- docker.io = Docker Hub

$ docker images
REPOSITORY      TAG          IMAGE ID      CREATED        SIZE
redis            latest        11c3e418c296   2 weeks ago   223MB
<Snip>
```

The image now exists in your local repository. However, I've annotated a few interesting lines from the `docker pull` output. We'll cover them in more detail later in the chapter but they're worth a quick mention now.

Docker is opinionated and made two assumptions when pulling the image:

1. It assumed you wanted to pull the image tagged as `latest`
2. It assumed you wanted to pull the image from Docker Hub

You can override both, but Docker will use these as defaults if you don't override them.

The Redis image has eight layers. However, Docker only pulled seven layers because it already had a local copy of one of them. This is because my system runs the *Portainer* Docker Desktop extension, which is based on an image that shares a common layer with the Redis image. You'll learn about this very soon, but images can share layers, and Docker is clever enough only to pull the layers it doesn't already have.

We'll talk more about these points later in the chapter.

Image registries

We store images in centralized places called *registries*. The job of a registry is to securely store images and make them easy to access from different environments.

Figure 6.2 shows the central nature of registries in the build > ship > run pipeline.

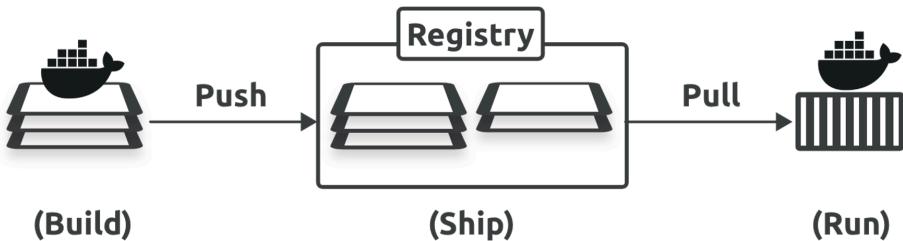


Figure 6.2

Most modern registries implement the OCI distribution-spec, and we sometimes call them *OCI registries*. Most registries also implement the Docker Registry v2 API, meaning you can use the Docker CLI and other API tools to query them and work with them in standard ways. Some offer advanced features such as image scanning and integration with build pipelines.

The most common registry is Docker Hub, but others exist, including 3rd-party internet-based registries and secure on-premises registries. However, as previously mentioned, Docker is opinionated and will default to Docker Hub unless you tell it the name of a different registry. We'll use Docker Hub for the rest of the book, but the principles apply to other registries.

Image registries contain one or more *image repositories*, and image repositories contain one or more images. Figure 6.3 shows an image registry with three repositories, each with one or more images.

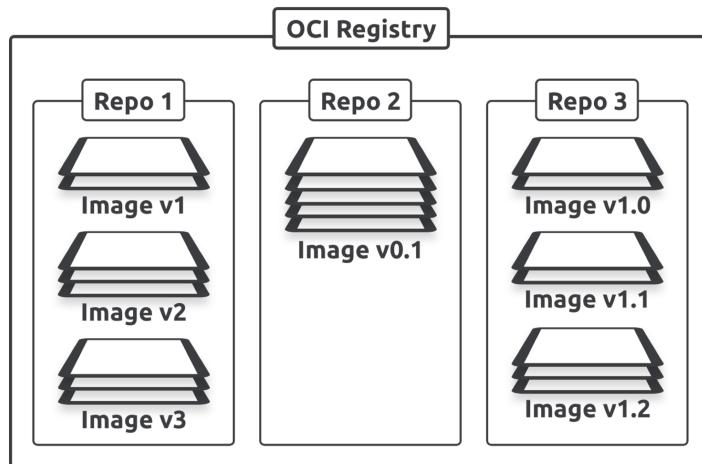


Figure 6.3 - Registry architecture

Official repositories

Docker Hub has the concept of *official repositories* that are home to images vetted and curated by Docker and the application vendor. This means they *should* contain up-to-date high-quality code that is secure, well-documented, and follows good practices.

Most of the popular applications and operating systems have *official repositories* on Docker Hub, and they're easy to identify because they live at the top level of the Docker Hub namespace and have a green *Docker Official Image* badge. The following list shows a few official repositories and their URLs that exist at the top level of the Docker Hub namespace:

- **nginx:** https://hub.docker.com/_/nginx/
- **busybox:** https://hub.docker.com/_/busybox/
- **redis:** https://hub.docker.com/_/redis/
- **mongo:** https://hub.docker.com/_/mongo/

Figure 6.4 shows the official Alpine and NGINX repositories on Docker Hub. Both have the green *Docker Official Image* badge and have over a billion pulls each. Also, notice how both are available for a wide range of CPU architectures.

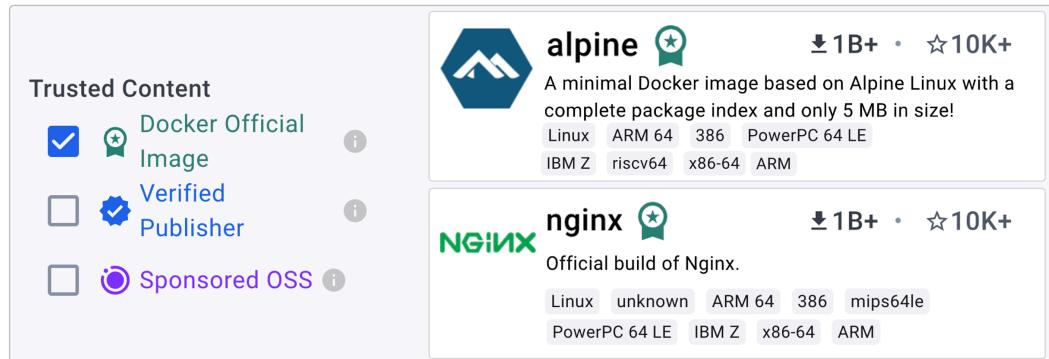


Figure 6.4 - Official repos on Docker Hub

Unofficial repositories

The following list shows two of my personal repositories in the wild west of *unofficial repositories* that you should not trust.

- [nigelpoulton/gsd](https://hub.docker.com/r/nigelpoulton/gsd/) — <https://hub.docker.com/r/nigelpoulton/gsd/>
- [nigelpoulton/k8sbook](https://hub.docker.com/r/nigelpoulton/k8sbook) — [https://hub.docker.com/r/nigelpoulton/k8sbook/](https://hub.docker.com/r/nigelpoulton/k8sbook)

Notice how they exist below the **nigelpoulton** second-level namespace. This is one of several indications they are not official repositories.

While there are lots of great images in unofficial repositories, you should always start with the assumption that anything from an unofficial repository is **unsafe**. This is based on the good practice of never trusting software from the internet. In fact, you should also exercise caution when downloading and using Docker Official Images.

Image naming and tagging

Most of the time, you'll work with images based on their names, and you can learn a lot about an image from its name. Figure 6.5 shows a fully qualified image name, including the registry name, user/organization name, repository name, and tag. Docker automatically populates the registry and tag values if you don't specify them.

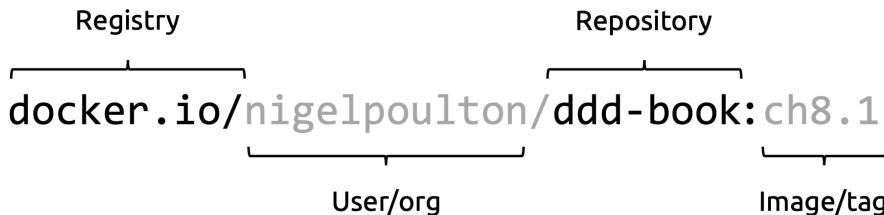


Figure 6.5 - Fully qualified image name

Addressing images from official repositories is easy. All you need to supply is the repository name and image name separated by a colon. Sometimes we call the image name the *tag*. The format for a `docker pull` command pulling an image from an official repository is:

```
$ docker pull <repository>:<tag>
```

The example from earlier pulled the Redis image with the following command. It pulled the image tagged as `latest` from the top-level `redis` repository.

```
$ docker pull redis:latest
```

The following examples show how to pull a few different official images.

```
$ docker pull mongo:7.0.5
//Pulls the image tagged as '7.0.5' from the official 'mongo' repository.
```

```
$ docker pull busybox:glibc
//Pulls the image tagged as 'glibc' from the official 'busybox' repository.
```

```
$ docker pull alpine
//Pulls the image tagged as 'latest' from the official 'alpine' repository.
```

A couple of things are worth noting.

- As previously mentioned, if you **don't** specify an image tag after the repository name, Docker assumes you want the image tagged as `latest`. The command will fail if the repository has no image tagged as `latest`.
- Images tagged as `latest` are not guaranteed to be the most up-to-date in the repository.

Pulling images from *unofficial repositories* is almost the same as pulling from official repositories — you just need to add a Docker Hub username or organization name before the repository name. The following example shows how to pull the `v2` image from the `tu-demo` repository owned by a not-to-be-trusted person whose Docker Hub ID is `nigelpoulton`.

```
$ docker pull nigelpoulton/tu-demo:v2
```

To pull an image from a different registry, you just add the registry's DNS name before the repository name. For example, the following command pulls the **latest** image from Brandon Mitchell's **regclient/regsync** repo on GitHub Container Registry (ghcr.io).

```
$ docker pull ghcr.io/regclient/regsync:latest
latest: Pulling from regclient/regsync
6f14f2b64ccf: Download complete
7746d6728537: Download complete
685af2c79c31: Download complete
4c377311167a: Download complete
662e9541e042: Download complete
Digest: sha256:149a95d47d6beed2a1404d7c3b00dddfa583a94836587ba8e3b4fe59853c1ece
Status: Downloaded newer image for ghcr.io/regclient/regsync:latest
ghcr.io/regclient/regsync:latest
```

Notice how the pull looks the same as it did with Docker Hub. This is because GHCR supports the OCI registry-spec and implements the Docker Registry v2 API.

Images with multiple tags

You can give a single image as many tags as you want.

At first glance, the following output might look like it's listing three images. However, on closer inspection it's just two — the **b4210d0aa52f** image is tagged as **latest** and **v1**.

```
$ docker images
REPOSITORY          TAG      IMAGE ID      CREATED       SIZE
nigelpoulton/tu-demo    latest   b4210d0aa52f  2 days ago   115MB
nigelpoulton/tu-demo    v1      b4210d0aa52f  2 days ago   115MB
nigelpoulton/tu-demo    v2      6ba12825d092  12 minutes ago 115MB
```

This is a great example of the **latest** tag not relating to the newest image in the repo. In this example, the **latest** tag refers to the same image as the **v1** tag, which is actually older than the **v2** image.

Images and layers

As already mentioned, images are a collection of loosely connected read-only layers where each layer comprises one or more files.

Figure 6.6 shows an image with four layers. Docker takes care of stacking them and representing them as a single unified image.

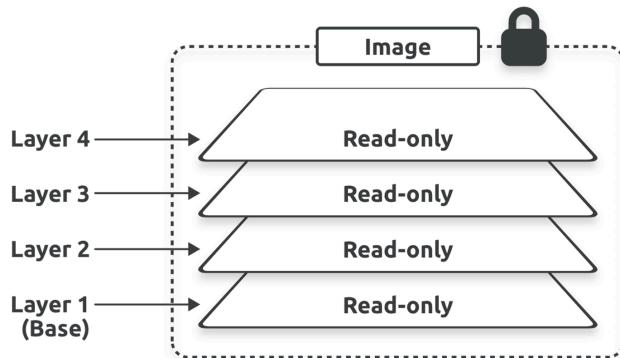


Figure 6.6 - Image and stacked layers

You're about to look at all of the following ways to inspect layer information:

- Pull operations
- The **docker inspect** command
- The **docker history** command

Run the following command to pull the **node:latest** image and observe it pulling the individual layers. Some newer versions may have more or less layers, but the principle is the same.

```
$ docker pull node:latest
latest: Pulling from library/ubuntu
952132ac251a: Pull complete
82659f8f1b76: Pull complete
c19118caa682d: Pull complete
8296858250fe: Pull complete
24e0251a0e2c: Pull complete
Digest: sha256:f4691c96e6bbbaa99d...28ae95a60369c506dd6e6f6ab
Status: Downloaded newer image for node:latest
docker.io/node:latest
```

Each line ending with *Pull complete* represents a layer that Docker pulled. This image has five layers and is shown in Figure 6.7 with layer IDs.

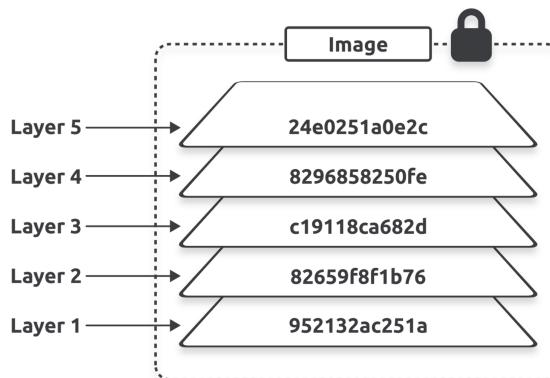


Figure 6.7 - Image layers and IDs

Another way to see image layers is to inspect the image with the **docker inspect** command. The following example inspects the same `node:latest` image pulled in the previous step.

```
$ docker inspect node:latest
[
  {
    "Id": "sha256:bd3d4369ae.....fa2645f5699037d7d8c6b415a10",
    "RepoTags": [
      "node:latest"
    ],
    <Snip>
    "RootFS": {
      "Type": "layers",
      "Layers": [
        "sha256:c8a75145fc...894129005e461a43875a094b93412",
        "sha256:c6f2b330b6...7214ed6aac305dd03f70b95cdc610",
        "sha256:055757a193...3a9565d78962c7f368d5ac5984998",
        "sha256:4837348061...12695f548406ea77feb5074e195e3",
        "sha256:0cad5e07ba...4bae4cfcc66b376265e16c32a0aae9"
      ]
    }
  }
]
```

The trimmed output shows the five layers. However, it shows their SHA256 hashes, which are different from the short IDs shown in the **docker pull** output.

The **docker inspect** command is great for getting detailed image information.

You can also use the **docker history** command to inspect an image and see its layer data. However, this command shows the build history of an image and is **not** a strict list

of layers in the final image. For example, some Dockerfile instructions (**ENV**, **EXPOSE**, **CMD**, and **ENTRYPOINT**) only add metadata and don't create layers.

Base layers

All Docker images start with a *base layer*, and every time you add new content, Docker adds a new layer.

Consider the following oversimplified example of building a simple Python application. Your corporate policy mandates all applications be built on top of the official Ubuntu 24:04 image. This means the official Ubuntu 24:04 image will be the base layer for this app. Installing Python will add a second layer, and your application source code will add a third. The final image will have three layers, as shown in Figure 6.8. Remember, this is an oversimplified example for demonstration purposes.

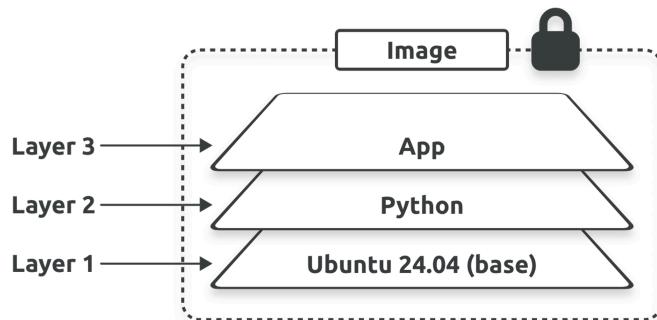


Figure 6.8

It's important to understand that an *image* is the combination of all layers stacked in the order they were built. Figure 6.9 shows an image with two layers. Each layer has three files, meaning the image has six files.

It also shows that the *layers* are stored as independent objects, and the *image* is just metadata identifying the required layers and explaining how to stack them.

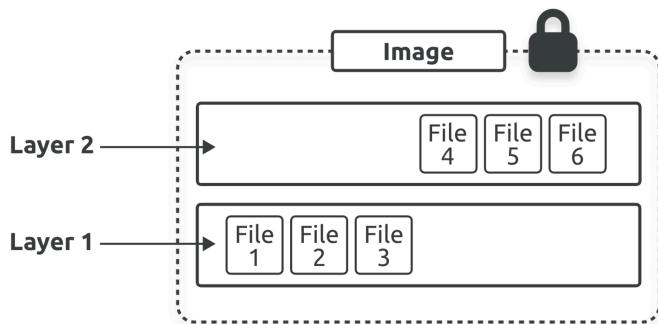


Figure 6.9

In the slightly more complex example of the three-layer image in Figure 6.10, the overall image only presents six files in the unified view. This is because **File 7** in the top layer is an updated version of **File 5** directly below (inline). In this situation, the file in the higher layer obscures the file directly below it. This means you can update the file in an image by adding new layers.

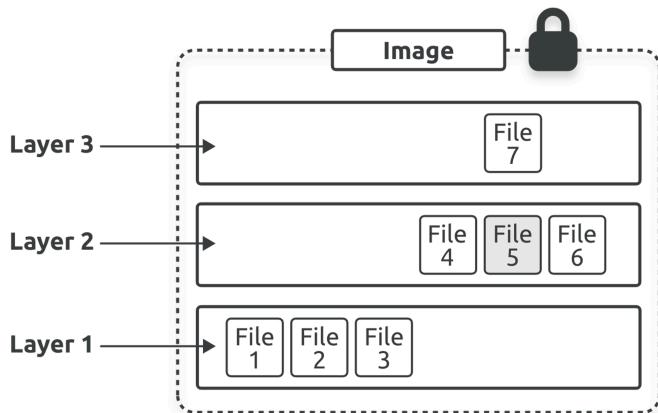


Figure 6.10 - Stacking layers

Under the hood, Docker uses *storage drivers* to stack layers and present them as a unified filesystem and image. Almost all Docker setups use the **overlay2** driver, but **zfs**, **btrfs**, and **vfs** are alternative options. However, whichever storage driver you use, the developer and user experience are always the same.

Figure 6.11 shows how the three-layer image from Figure 6.10 will appear on the system — all three layers stacked and merged into a single unified view.

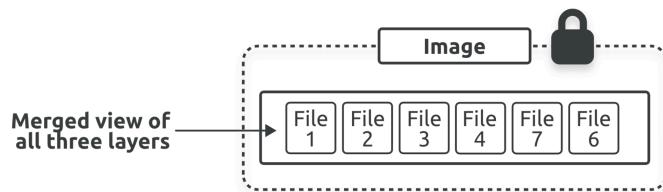


Figure 6.11 - Unified view of multi-layer image

Sharing image layers

As previously mentioned, images can share layers, leading to efficiencies in space and performance.

One of the earlier `docker pull` commands generated an *Already exists* message for one of the layers it pulled. This occurred because one of my Docker Desktop extensions had already pulled an image that used the exact same layer. As a result, Docker skipped that layer as it already had a local copy.

Here's the code from earlier, and Figure 6.12 shows two images sharing the same layer.

```
$ docker pull redis:latest
latest: Pulling from library/redis
25d3892798f8: Download complete
e5d458cf0bea: Download complete
4f4fb700ef54: Already exists      <----- This line
<Snip>
```

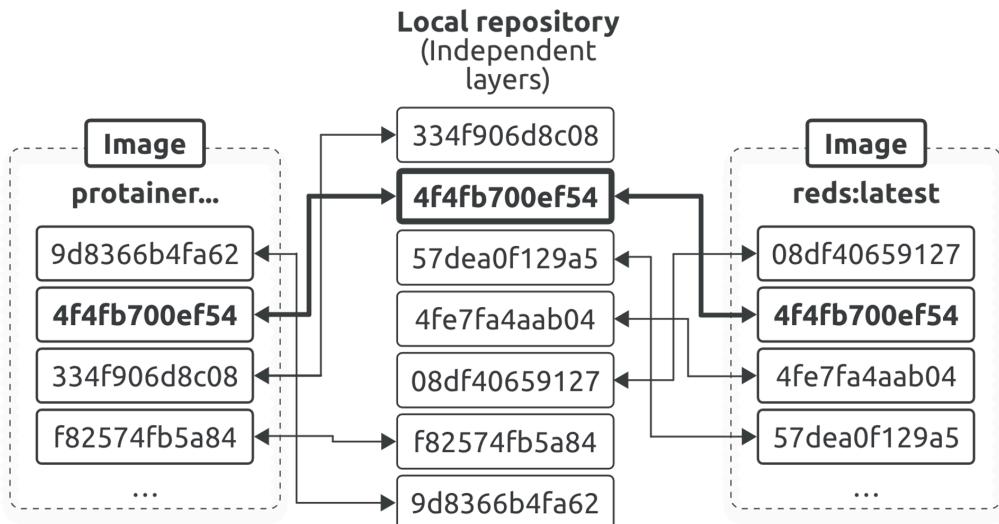


Figure 6.12 - Two images sharing a layer

Layers are also shared on the registry side. This means you can store lots of similar images in a registry, and the registry will save space by never storing more than a single copy of any layer.

Pulling images by digest

So far, you've seen how to pull and work with images using names (tags). While this is the most common method, it has a problem — tags are mutable. This means it's possible to tag an image incorrectly or give a new image the same tag as an older one. An extremely common example is the `latest` tag. For example, pulling the `alpine:latest` tag a year ago will not pull the same image as pulling the same tag today.

Consider a quick example outlining one potential implication of trusting mutable tags. Imagine you have an image called `golftrack:1.5` and you get a warning that it has a critical vulnerability. You build a new image containing the fix and push the new image to the same repository with the **same tag**.

Take a moment to consider what just happened and the implications.

You have an image called `golftrack:1.5` that's being used by lots of containers in your production environment, and it has a critical bug. You create a new version containing the fix. So far, so good, but then you make the mistake. You push the new image to the same repository with the **same tag as the vulnerable image**. This overwrites the original image and leaves you without a great way of knowing which of your production

containers are using the vulnerable image and which are using the fixed image — both images have the same tag!

This is where *image digests* come to the rescue.

Docker uses a *content addressable storage* model where every image gets a cryptographic *content hash* that we usually call the *digest*. As these are hashes of an image's contents, it's impossible for two different images to have the same digest. It's also impossible to change an image without creating a new unique digest. Fortunately, Docker lets you work with image digests instead of just names.

If you've already pulled an image by name, you can see its digest by running a **docker images** command with the **--digests** flag as shown.

```
$ docker images --digests alpine
REPOSITORY      TAG      DIGEST
alpine          latest   sha256:c5b1261d...8e1ad6b
                                         IMAGE ID      CREATED      SIZE
                                         c5b1261d6d3e  2 weeks ago  11.8MB
```

If you want to find an image's digest **before pulling** it, you can use the **docker buildx imagetools** command. The following example retrieves the image digest for the **nigelpoulton/k8sbook/latest** image on Docker Hub.

```
$ docker buildx imagetools inspect nigelpoulton/k8sbook:latest
Name:      docker.io/nigelpoulton/k8sbook:latest
MediaType: application/vnd.docker.distribution.manifest.list.v2+json
Digest:    sha256:13dd59a0c74e9a147800039b1ff4d61201375c008b96a29c5bd17244bce2e14b
<Snip>
```

You can now use the digest to pull the image. I've trimmed the command and the output for readability.

```
$ docker pull nigelpoulton/k8sbook@sha256:13dd59a0...bce2e14b
docker.io/nigelpoulton/k8sbook@sha256:13dd59a0...bce2e14b: Pulling from nigelpoulton/k8sbook
59f1664fb787: Download complete
a052f1888b3e: Download complete
94a9f4dfa0e5: Download complete
bb7e600677fa: Download complete
edfb0c26f1fb: Download complete
5b1423465504: Download complete
2f232a362cd9: Download complete
Digest: sha256:13dd59a0...bce2e14b
Status: Downloaded newer image for nigelpoulton/k8sbook@sha256:13dd59a0...bce2e14b
docker.io/nigelpoulton/k8sbook:latest@sha256:13dd59a0...bce2e14b
```

It's also possible to directly query the registry API for image data, including digest. The following **curl** command queries Docker Hub for the digest of the same image.

```
$ curl "https://hub.docker.com/v2/repositories/nigelpoulton/k8sbook/tags/?name=latest" \
| jq '.results[].digest'

"sha256:13dd59a0c74e9a147800039b1ff4d61201375c008b96a29c5bd17244bce2e14b"
```

Image hashes and layer hashes

You already know that images are just a loose collection of independent layers. This means an *image* is just a manifest file with some metadata and a list of layers. The actual application and all its dependencies live in the *layers*. However, layers are fully independent and have no concept of being part of an image.

With this in mind, images and layers have their own digests as follows:

- Images digests are a crypto hash of the image manifest file
- Layer digests are a crypto hash of the layer's contents

This means all changes to layers or image manifests result in new hashes, giving us an easy and reliable way to know if changes have been made.

Content hashes vs distribution hashes

Docker compares hashes before and after every push and pull to ensure no tampering has occurred. However, it also compresses images during push and pull operations to save network bandwidth and storage space on the registry. As a result of this compression, the before and after hashes won't match.

To get around this, each layer gets two hashes:

- Content hash (uncompressed)
- Distribution hash (compressed)

Every time Docker pushes or pulls a layer from a registry, it includes the layer's *distribution hash* and uses this to verify no tampering occurred. This is one reason why the hashes in different CLI and registry outputs don't always match — sometimes you're looking at the content hash, and other times you're looking at the distribution hash.

Multi-architecture images

One of the best things about Docker is its simplicity. However, as technologies grow, they inevitably get more complex. This happened for Docker when it started supporting different platforms and architectures, such as Windows and Linux on variations of ARM, x64, PowerPC, s390x and more. Suddenly, there were multiple versions of the same image for all the different architectures, and developers and users had to put in significant extra work to get the right version. This broke the smooth Docker experience.

Multi-architecture images to the rescue!

Fortunately, Docker and the registry API adapted and became clever enough to hide images for multiple architectures behind a single tag. This means you can do a **docker pull alpine** on any architecture and get the correct version of the image. For example, if you're on an AMD64 machine, you'll get the AMD64 image.

To make this happen, the Registry API supports two important constructs:

- Manifest lists
- Manifests

The *manifest list* is exactly what it sounds like — a list of architectures supported by an image tag. Each supported architecture then has its own *manifest* that lists the layers used to build it.

Run the following command to see the different architectures supported behind the **alpine:latest** tag.

```
$ docker buildx imagetools inspect alpine
Name:      docker.io/library/alpine:latest
MediaType: application/vnd.docker.distribution.manifest.list.v2+json
Digest:    sha256:c5b1261d6d3e43071626931fc004f70149baeba2c8ec672bd4f27761f8e1ad6b

Manifests:
  Name:      docker.io/library/alpine:latest@sha256:6457d53f...628977d0
  MediaType: application/vnd.docker.distribution.manifest.v2+json
  Platform:  linux/amd64

  Name:      docker.io/library/alpine:latest@sha256:b229a851...d144c1d8
  MediaType: application/vnd.docker.distribution.manifest.v2+json
  Platform:  linux/arm/v6

  Name:      docker.io/library/alpine:latest@sha256:ec299a7b...33b4c6fe
  MediaType: application/vnd.docker.distribution.manifest.v2+json
  Platform:  linux/arm/v7
```

```
Name: docker.io/library/alpine:latest@sha256:a0264d60...93467a46
MediaType: application/vnd.docker.distribution.manifest.v2+json
Platform: linux/arm64/v8
```

```
Name: docker.io/library/alpine:latest@sha256:15c46ced...ab073171
MediaType: application/vnd.docker.distribution.manifest.v2+json
Platform: linux/386
```

```
Name: docker.io/library/alpine:latest@sha256:b12b826d...ba52a3a2
MediaType: application/vnd.docker.distribution.manifest.v2+json
Platform: linux/ppc64le
```

If you look closely, you'll see a single *manifest list* pointing to six *manifests*.

MediaType: application/vnd.docker.distribution.manifest.list.v2+json is the manifest list.

Each **MediaType: application/vnd.docker.distribution.manifest.v2+json** line refers to a manifest for each specific architecture.

Figure 6.13 shows how manifest lists and manifests are related. On the left, you can see a manifest list with entries for the different architectures supported by the image. The arrows show that each entry in the manifest list points to a manifest defining the image config and the list of layers making up the image for that architecture.

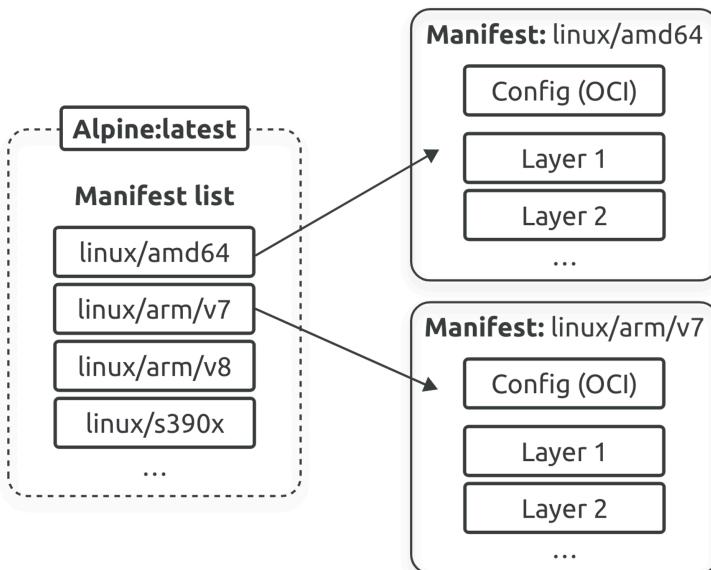


Figure 6.13 - Manifest lists and manifests

Let's step through a quick example.

Assume you're using Docker Desktop on an M3 Mac where Docker runs inside a **linux/arm** VM. You ask Docker to pull an image, and Docker makes the relevant calls to the Registry API to request the appropriate manifest list. Assuming it exists, Docker then parses it a **linux/arm** entry. If **linux/arm** entry exists, Docker retrieves its manifest, parses it for the crypto IDs of its layers, pulls each individual layer, and assembles them into the image.

Let's see it in action.

The following examples are from Docker Desktop on an ARM-based Mac and Docker Desktop on an AMD-based Windows machine running in *Windows containers mode*.

Both start a new container based the official **golang** image and execute the **go version** command. The outputs show the version of Go and the host's platform and CPU architecture. Notice how both commands are exactly the same, and Docker takes care of pulling the correct image.

Both images are large and may take a while to download. You do not need to complete these commands yourself.

Linux on arm64 example:

```
$ docker run --rm golang go version
<Snip>
go version go1.22.0 linux/arm64
```

Windows on x64 example:

```
> docker run --rm golang go version
<Snip>
go version go1.20.4 windows/amd64
```

You've already seen how to use the **docker buildx imagedata** command to see the manifest list and manifests for an image. You can get similar information from the **docker manifest** command. The following example inspects the manifest list for the official **golang** image on Docker Hub. You can see it has images for Linux and Windows on a variety of CPU architectures. You can run the same command without the **grep** filter to see the full JSON manifest list. Windows users should replace the **grep** command with **Select-String architecture,os**

```
$ docker manifest inspect golang | grep 'architecture\|os'  
    "architecture": "amd64",  
    "os": "linux"  
    "architecture": "arm",  
    "os": "linux",  
    "architecture": "arm64",  
    "os": "linux",  
    "architecture": "386",  
    "os": "linux"  
    "architecture": "mips64le",  
    "os": "linux"  
    "architecture": "ppc64le",  
    "os": "linux"  
    "architecture": "s390x",  
    "os": "linux"  
    "architecture": "amd64",  
    "os": "windows",  
    "os.version": "10.0.20348.2227"  
    "architecture": "amd64",  
    "os": "windows",  
    "os.version": "10.0.17763.5329"
```

Pulling the right image for your system is one thing, but what about **building** images for all these different architectures?

The **docker buildx** command makes it easy to create multi-architecture images. For example, you can use Docker Desktop on **linux/arm** to build images for **linux/amd** and possibly other architectures. We'll perform builds like these in future chapters, but **docker buildx** offers two ways to create multi-architecture images:

- Emulation
- Build Cloud

Emulation mode performs builds for different architectures on your local machine by running the build inside a QEMU virtual machine emulating the target architecture. It works most of the time but is slow and doesn't have a shared cache.

Build Cloud is a new service from Docker, Inc. that performs builds in the cloud on native hardware without requiring emulation. It's very fast, lets you share a common build cache with teammates, and is seamlessly integrated into Docker Desktop and any version of the Docker Engine using a version of buildx supporting the cloud driver. It also integrates with GitHub actions and other CI solutions. At the time of writing, Docker Build Cloud is a subscription service you have to pay for.

We'll use both in future chapters, but I ran the following command to build AMD and ARM versions of the **nigelpoulton/tu-demo** image using Docker Build Cloud.

```
$ docker buildx build \  
--builder=cloud-nigelpoulton-ddd-cloud \  
--platform=linux/amd64,linux/arm64 \  
-t nigelpoulton/tu-demo:latest --push .
```

Vulnerability scanning with Docker Scout

Lots of tools and plugins exist that scan images for known vulnerabilities.

We'll look at Docker Scout, as it's built into almost every level of Docker, including the CLI, Docker Desktop, Docker Hub, and the scout.docker.com portal. It's a very slick service, but it requires a paid subscription. Other similar products and services exist, but most require paid subscriptions.

Recent versions of Docker Desktop have the Scout CLI plugin pre-installed and ready to go. If you're running a different version of Docker, you may be able to install the CLI plugin from the [GitHub repo](#)¹⁴.

You can use the `docker scout quickview` command to get a quick vulnerability overview of an image. The following command analyses the `nigelpoulton/tu-demo:latest` image. If a local copy doesn't exist, it pulls it from Docker Hub and performs the analysis locally.

```
$ docker scout quickview nigelpoulton/tu-demo:latest  
✓ SBOM of image already cached, 66 packages indexed
```

Target digest	nigelpoulton/tu-demo:latest b4210d0aa52f	0C	1H	1M	0L
Base image	python:3-alpine	0C	1H	1M	0L
Updated base image	python:3.11-alpine	0C	1H	1M	0L

The output shows zero critical vulnerabilities (0C), one high (1H), one medium (1M), and zero low (0L).

You can use the `docker scout cves` command to get more detailed information, including remediation advice.

¹⁴<https://github.com/docker/scout-cli>

```
$ docker scout cves nigelpoulton/tu-demo:latest

✓ SBOM of image already cached, 66 packages indexed
☒ Detected 1 vulnerable package with 2 vulnerabilities

## Overview
```

	Analyzed Image
Target	nigelpoulton/tu-demo:latest
digest	b4210d0aa52f
platform	linux/arm64/v8
vulnerabilities	0C 1H 1M 0L
size	26 MB
packages	66

```
## Packages and Vulnerabilities
0C 1H 1M 0L expat 2.5.0-r2
pkg:apk/alpine/expat@2.5.0-r2?os_name=alpine&os_version=3.19

☒ HIGH CVE-2023-52425
https://scout.docker.com/v/CVE-2023-52425
Affected range : <2.6.0-r0
Fixed version : 2.6.0-r0
<Snip>
```

I've snipped the output so it only shows the critical and high vulnerabilities, but several things are clear:

- It has detected one vulnerable package containing two vulnerabilities
- The affected package is called **expat** and the vulnerable version we're running is **2.5.0-r2**
- It lists the vulnerability as **CVE-2023-52425**
- It includes a link to a Scout report containing more info
- It suggests we update to version **2.6.0-r0** which contains the fix

Figure 6.14 shows how this looks in Docker Desktop, and you get similar integrations and views in Docker Hub.

The screenshot shows the Docker Scout integration within Docker Desktop. On the left, the 'Image hierarchy' pane displays the Dockerfile history with three images. The bottom-most image, 'nigelpoulton/tu-demo:latest', is selected and highlighted with a blue border. The 'Vulnerabilities (2)' tab is active, showing two findings. The first is 'alpine/expat 2.5.0-r2' with a CVSS score of 7.5, an affected range of '<2.6.0-r0', and a fix version of '2.6.0-r0'. The second is 'CVE-2023-52425' with a CVSS score of 7.5 H. The 'Layers (20)' pane on the left lists the five layers of the Dockerfile, each with its type (ADD, CMD, ENV, RUN), index, size, and a green shield icon indicating no known vulnerabilities.

Figure 6.14 - Docker Scout integration with Docker Desktop

The `scout.docker.com` portal provides an overview dashboard, allows you to configure policies, and lets you set up integrations with Docker Hub and other registries to remotely scan and monitor multiple repositories.

Deleting Images

You can delete images using the `docker rmi` command. `rmi` is short for *remove image*.

Deleting images removes them from your local repository and they'll no longer show up in your `docker images` commands. The operation also deletes all directories on your local filesystem containing layer data. However, Docker won't delete layers shared by multiple images until you delete all images that reference them.

You can delete images by name, short ID, or SHA. You can also delete multiple images with the same command.

The following command deletes three images — one by name, one by short ID, and one by SHA. I've trimmed the output for easier reading.

```
$ docker rmi redis:latest af111729d35a sha256:c5b1261d...f8e1ad6b
Untagged: redis:latest
Deleted: sha256:76d5908f5e19fcdd73daf956a38826f790336ee4707d9028f32b24ad9ac72c08
Untagged: nigelpoulton/tu-demo:v2
Deleted: sha256:af111729d35a09fd24c25607ec045184bb8d76e37714dfc2d9e55d13b3ebbc67
Untagged: alpine:latest
Deleted: sha256:c5b1261d6d3e43071626931fc004f70149baeba2c8ec672bd4f27761f8e1ad6b
```

Docker will prevent the delete operation if the image is being used by a container or referenced by more than one tag. However, you can force the operation with the **-f** flag, but you should do so with caution, as forcing Docker to delete an image in use by a container will untag the image and leave it on the system as a *dangling image*.

A handy way to **delete all images** is to pass a list of all local image IDs to the **docker rmi** command. You should use this command with caution, and if you're following along on Windows, it will only work in a PowerShell terminal.

```
$ docker rmi $(docker images -q) -f
```

To understand how this works, download a couple of images and then run **docker images -q**.

```
$ docker pull alpine
<Snip>

$ docker pull ubuntu
<Snip>

$ docker images -q
44dd6f223004
3f5ef9003cef
```

See how the **docker images -q** returns a list of local image IDs. Passing this list to **docker rmi** will delete all images on the system as shown next.

```
$ docker rmi $(docker images -q) -f
Untagged: alpine:latest
Untagged: alpine@sha256:02bb6f428431fb...a33cb1af4444c9b11
Deleted: sha256:44dd6f2230041...09399391535c0c0183b
Deleted: sha256:94dd7d531fa56...97252ba88da87169c3f
Untagged: ubuntu:latest
Untagged: ubuntu@sha256:df64a3b4296d8...9ee20739e8eb54fbf
Deleted: sha256:3f5ef9003cef...79cb530c29298550b92
Deleted: sha256:b49483f6a0e69...f3075564c10349774c3

$ docker images
REPOSITORY      TAG      IMAGE ID      CREATED      SIZE
```

Let's remind ourselves of some of the commands we've used.

Images – The commands

- **docker pull** is the command to download images from remote registries. It defaults to Docker Hub but works with other registries. The following command will pull the image tagged as **latest** from the **alpine** repository on Docker Hub: `docker pull alpine:latest`.
- **docker images** lists all of the images in your Docker host's local repository (image cache). You can add the **--digests** flag to see the SHA256 hashes.
- **docker inspect** gives you a wealth of image-related metadata in a nicely formatted view.
- **docker manifest inspect** lets you inspect the manifest list of images stored in registries. The following command will show the manifest list for the **regctl** image on GitHub Container Registry (GHCR): `docker manifest inspect ghcr.io/regclient/regctl`.
- **docker buildx** is a Docker CLI plugin that works with Docker's latest build engine features. You saw how to use the **imagetools** sub-command to query manifest-related data from images.
- **docker scout** is a Docker CLI plugin that integrates with the Docker Scout backend to perform image vulnerability scanning. It scans images, provides reports on vulnerabilities, and even suggests remediation actions.
- **docker rmi** is the command to delete images. It deletes all layer data stored in the local filesystem, and you cannot delete images associated with containers in the running (Up) or stopped (Exited) states.

Chapter summary

This chapter taught you the important theory and fundamentals of images.

You learned that images contain everything needed to run an application as a container. This includes just enough OS, source code, dependencies, and metadata.

You can start one or more containers from a single image.

Under the hood, Docker constructs images by stacking one or more read-only layers and presenting them as a unified object. Every image has a manifest that lists the layers that make up the image and how to stack them.

You learned that image names are also called tags, they're mutable, and they don't always pull the same image. For example, pulling the **alpine:latest** tag today will not pull the same image as it will a year from now. Fortunately, every image gets an immutable digest that you can use to guarantee you always pull the same image.

Docker Hub has the notion of curated *official images* that should be safer to use than unofficial images. However, you should always exercise caution when downloading software from the Internet, even official images from Docker Hub.

Images can share layers for efficiency, and Docker makes it easy to build and pull images for lots of different CPU architectures, such as ARM and AMD.

Docker Scout scans images for known vulnerabilities and provides remediation recommendations. It requires a Docker subscription and is integrated into the **docker** CLI, Docker Hub, and Docker Desktop.

In the next chapter, we'll take a similar tour of containers — the run-time sibling of images.

7: Working with containers

Docker implements the Open Container Initiative (OCI) specifications. This means some of the things you'll learn in this chapter will apply to other container runtimes and platforms that implement the OCI specifications.

I've divided the chapter into the following sections:

- Container – The TLDR
- Containers vs VMs
- Images and containers
- Check Docker is running
- Starting a container
- How containers start apps
- Connecting to a container
- Inspecting container processes
- The **docker inspect** command
- Writing data to a container
- Stopping, restarting, and deleting a container
- Killing a container's main process
- Debugging slim images and containers with Docker Debug
- Self-healing containers with restart policies
- The commands

Containers – The TLDR

Containers are run-time instances of images, and you can start one or more containers from a single image.

Figure 7.1 shows multiple containers started from a single image. The shared image is read-only, but you can write to the containers.

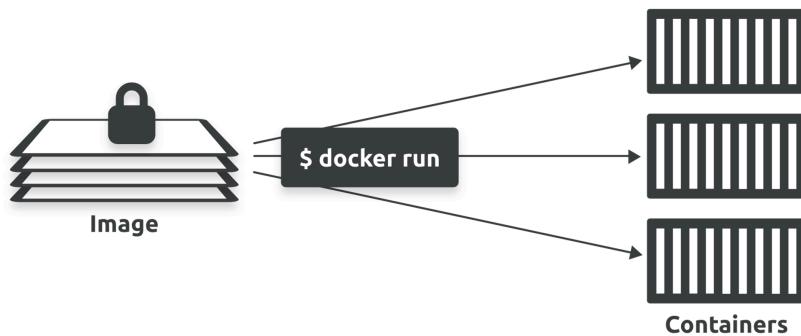


Figure 7.1

You can start, stop, restart, and delete containers just like you can with VMs. However, containers are smaller, faster, and more portable than VMs. They're also designed to be *stateless* and *ephemeral*, whereas VMs are designed to be long-running and can be migrated with their state and data.

Containers are also designed to be *immutable*. This means you shouldn't change them after you've deployed them — if a container fails, you replace it with a new one instead of connecting to it and making the fix in the live instance.

Containers should only run a single process and we use them to build microservices apps. For example, an application with four features (microservices), such as a web server, auth, catalog, and store, will have four containers — one running the web server, one running the auth service, one running the catalog, and another running the store.

Containers vs VMs

Containers and VMs are both virtualization technologies for running applications. They both work on your laptop, bare metal servers, in the cloud, and more. However, the ways they *virtualize* are very different:

- VMs virtualize hardware
- Containers virtualize operating systems

In the VM model, you power on a server and a hypervisor boots. When the hypervisor boots, it claims all hardware resources such as CPU, RAM, storage, and network adapters. To deploy an app, you ask the hypervisor to create a virtual machine. It does this by carving up the hardware resources into virtual versions, such as virtual CPUs and Virtual RAM, and packaging them into a VM that looks exactly like a physical server. Once you have the VM, you install an OS and then an app.

In the container model, you power on the same server and an OS boots and claims all hardware resources. You then install a container engine such as Docker. To deploy an app, you ask Docker to create a container. It does this by carving up OS resources such as process trees and filesystems into virtual versions and then packaging them as a container that looks exactly like a regular OS. You then tell Docker to run the app in the container.

Figure 7.2 shows the two models side by side and attempts to demonstrate the more efficient nature of containers with the same server running 3x more containers than VMs.

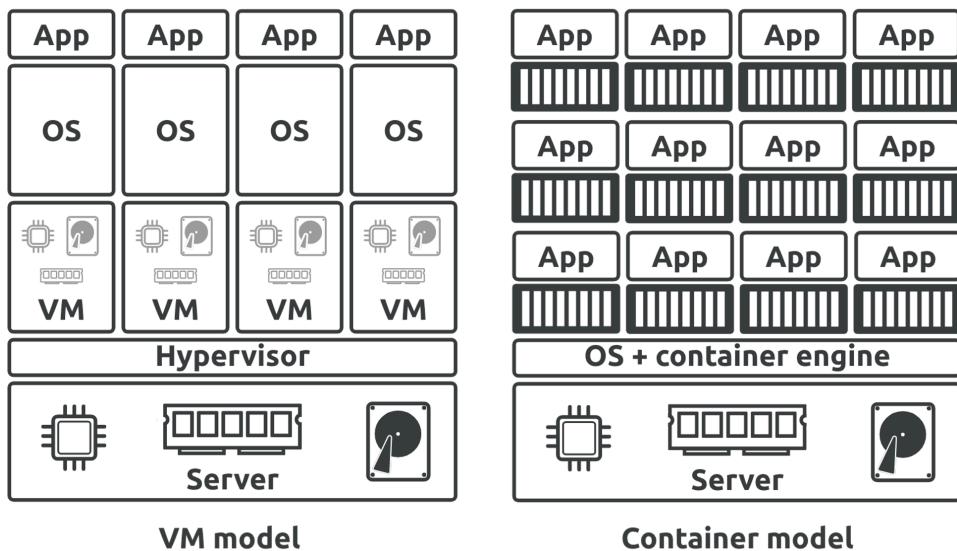


Figure 7.2

In summary, hypervisors perform *hardware virtualization* where they divide hardware resources into virtual versions and package them as VMs. Container engines perform *OS virtualization* where they divide OS resources into virtual versions and package them as *containers*. VMs look and feel exactly like physical servers. Containers look and feel exactly like regular operating systems.

The VM tax

One of the biggest problems with the virtual machine model is that you need to install an OS on every VM — every OS consumes CPU, RAM, and storage and takes a relatively long time to boot.

Containers get around all of this by sharing a single OS on the host they're running on. This gives containers all of the following benefits over VMs:

- Containers are smaller and more portable
- You can run more containers on your infrastructure
- Containers start faster
- Containers reduce the number of operating systems you need to manage (patch, update, etc.)
- Containers present a smaller attack surface

Let's briefly expand on each point.

Containers are smaller than VMs because they only contain application code and a minimal set of OS-related constructs, such as essential filesystem objects. Because of this, they're typically only a few megabytes in size. On the other hand, every VM needs a full OS, meaning they're usually hundreds or thousands of megabytes.

Because containers don't contain an OS, you can run a lot more containers than VMs. For example, deploying 100 applications as VMs will require 100 operating systems, each consuming CPU, memory, and storage, and each needing to be patched and managed. However, deploying the same 100 applications as containers requires no additional operating systems. This drastically reduces your OS management overhead and allows you to allocate more system resources to applications instead of operating systems.

Containers also start faster than VMs because they use the host's OS which is already booted. On the other hand, VMs need to go through a full OS bootstrapping process before starting the app.

One of the early concerns about containers centered around the shared kernel model where all containers on the same host share the host's kernel. While this offers performance and portability benefits, it's less secure than the VM model where every VM has its own dedicated kernel. For example, a rogue container that exploits a vulnerability in the host's kernel might be able to impact every other container on the same host.

Fortunately, this is much less of a concern now that container platforms have matured and ship with class-leading tools that can make them more secure than non-container platforms. For example, most container engines and platforms implement *sensible defaults* for security-related technologies such as *SELinux*, *AppArmor*, *seccomp*, *capabilities*, and more. You can even configure these to make containers more secure than VMs. Other technologies, such as image vulnerability scanning, give you more control over the security of your software than you ever had before.

At the time of writing, in 2024, containers are the go-to solution for the vast majority of new applications.

Pre-reqs

You'll need a working Docker environment to follow along with the examples, and I recommend Docker Desktop. Other Docker setups should work, but you may have to manually install the Docker Debug plugin if you want to follow along with those examples.

Images and Containers

As previously mentioned, you can start multiple containers from a single image. The image is read-only in this relationship, but each container is read-write. As shown in Figure 7.3, Docker accomplishes this by creating a thin read-write layer for each container and placing it on top of the shared image.

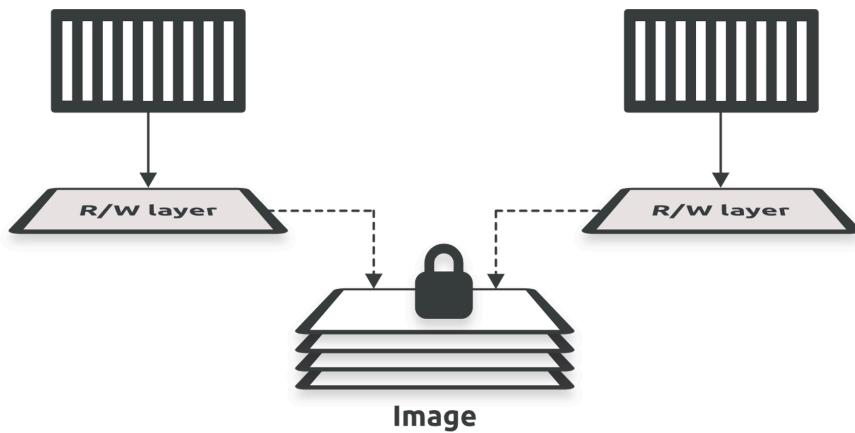


Figure 7.3 - Container R/W layers

In this example, each container has its own thin R/W layer but shares the same image. The containers can see and access the files and apps in the image *through* their own R/W layer, and if they make any changes, these get written to their R/W layer. When you stop a container, Docker keeps the R/W layer and restores it when you restart the container. However, when you delete a container, Docker deletes its R/W layer. This way, each container can make and keep its own changes without changing the shared image.

Check Docker is running

Run a **docker version** to check Docker is running. It's a good command because it checks the CLI and engine components.

```
$ docker version
Client:
Cloud integration: v1.0.35+desktop.13
Version:          26.1.1
API version:      1.45
OS/Arch:          darwin/arm64
<Snip>
Server: Docker Desktop 4.30.0 (149282)
Engine:
  Version:        26.1.1
  API version:   1.45 (minimum version 1.24)
  OS/Arch:        linux/arm64
<Snip>
```

As long as you get a response from the **Client** and **Server**, you're good to go and can skip to the next section.

If you get an error code in the **Server** section, this usually means your Docker daemon (server) isn't running or your user account doesn't have permission to access it. If you're running on Linux, you'll need to ensure your user account is a member of the local **docker** Unix group. If it isn't, you can add it by running **usermod -aG docker <username>** and restarting your shell. Alternatively, you can prefix all **docker** commands with **sudo**.

Your account needs to be a member of the **docker** group so it can access the API which is exposed on a privileged local Unix socket at **/var/run/docker.sock**. It's also possible to expose the API over the network.

If your user account is already a member of the local **docker** group and you still get an error from the daemon, there's a good chance the Docker daemon isn't running. Run one of the following commands to check the status of the daemon.

Linux systems not using Systemd.

```
$ service docker status
docker start/running, process 29393
```

Linux systems using Systemd.

```
$ systemctl is-active docker  
active
```

If the daemon isn't running, start it with the appropriate command for your system.

Starting a container

The **docker run** command is the simplest and most common way to start a new container.

Run the following command to start a new container called **webserver**.

```
$ docker run -d --name webserver -p 5005:8080 nigelpoulton/ddd-book:web0.1  
Unable to find image 'nigelpoulton/ddd-book:web0.1' locally  
web0.1: Pulling from nigelpoulton/ddd-book  
4f4fb700ef54: Already exists  
cf2a607f33f7: Download complete  
0a1f0c111e9a: Download complete  
c1af4b5db242: Download complete  
Digest: sha256:3f5b281b914b1e39df8a1fbc189270a5672ff9e98bfa03193b42d1c02c43ef0  
Status: Downloaded newer image for nigelpoulton/ddd-book:web0.1  
b5594b3b8b3fdce544d2ca048e4340d176bce9f5dc430812a20f1852c395e96b
```

Let's take a closer look at the command and the output.

docker run tells Docker to run a new container

The **-d** flag tells Docker to run it in the background as a *daemon process* and detached from your local terminal

The **name** flag tells Docker to name this container **webserver**.

The **-p 5005:8080** flag maps port 5005 on your local system to port 8080 inside the container. This works because the container's web server is listening on port 8080.

The **nigelpoulton/ddd-book:web0.1** argument tells Docker which image to use to start the container.

When you hit **Return**, the Docker client converted the command into an API request and posted it to the Docker API exposed by the Docker daemon. The Docker daemon accepted the command and searched its local image repository for a copy of the **nigelpoulton/ddd-book:web0.1** image. It didn't find one, so it searched Docker Hub. In the example, it found one on Docker Hub and pulled a local copy.

Once it had a local copy of the image, the daemon made a request to containerd asking for a new container. containerd then instructed runc to create the container and start the app. It also performed the port mapping.

Run the following commands to verify the image was pulled locally and a new container called **webserver** is running.

```
$ docker images
```

REPOSITORY	TAG	IMAGE ID	CREATED	SIZE
nigelpoulton/ddd-book	web0.1	3f5b281b914b	12 minutes ago	159MB

```
$ docker ps
```

CONTAINER ID	IMAGE	COMMAND	STATUS	PORTS	NAMES
b5594b3b8b3f	nigelpoulton...	"node ./app.js"	Up 2 mins	0.0.0.0:80->8080/tcp	webserver

You can also connect a browser to port 5005 on your Docker host to test the app. If you're using Docker Desktop, point your browser to `localhost:5005`. If you're not running Docker Desktop, you may need to substitute `localhost` with the name or IP of the host Docker is running on.

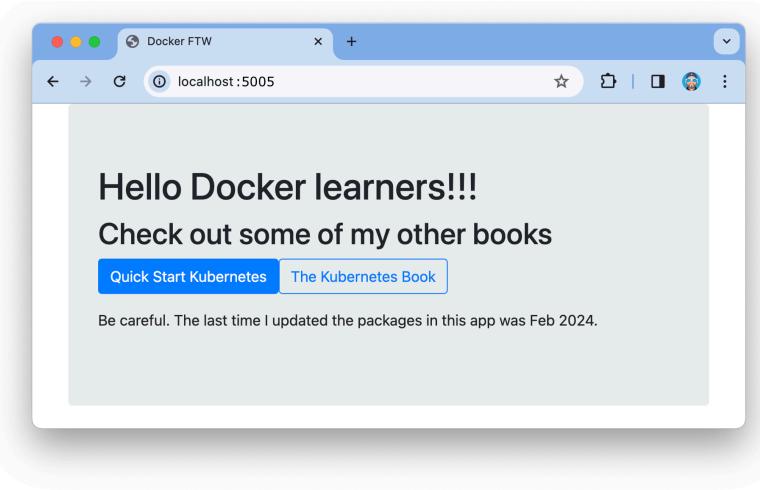


Figure 7.4 - Web app running on container

Congratulations. Docker pulled a local copy of the image and started a container running the app defined in the image.

How containers start apps

In the previous section, you created a container running a web app. But how did the container know which app to start and how to start it?

There are three ways you can tell Docker how to start an app in a container:

1. An **Entrypoint** instruction in the image
2. A **Cmd** instruction in the image
3. A CLI argument

You'll learn more about these in the next chapter, but the *Entrypoint* and *Cmd* instructions are optional image metadata that store the command Docker uses to start the default app. Then, whenever you start a container from the image, Docker checks the *Entrypoint* or *Cmd* instruction and executes the stored command.

Entrypoint instructions cannot be overridden on the CLI, and anything you pass in via the CLI will be appended to the *Entrypoint* instruction as an argument.

Cmd instructions can be overridden by CLI arguments.

Run the following command to see if the **nigelpoulton/ddd-book:web0.1** image has an *Entrypoint* instruction. The command searches the image metadata and returns any lines containing the word “*Entrypoint*” and the three lines immediately following it. Windows users will need to replace the **grep** command with **Select-String -Pattern 'Entrypoint' -Context 0,3**.

```
$ docker inspect nigelpoulton/ddd-book:web0.1 | grep Entrypoint -A 3
<Snip>
"Entrypoint": [
    "node",
    "./app.js"
],
```

This image has an *Entrypoint* instruction that translates into the following command — **node ./app.js**. If you're not familiar with Node.js, it's a simple command telling the Node.js runtime to execute the code in the **app.js** file.

If an image doesn't have an *Entrypoint* instruction, you can search for the presence of a *Cmd* instruction.

If an image doesn't have either, you'll need to pass an argument on the CLI.

The format of the **docker run** command is:

```
docker run <arguments> <image> <command>
```

As mentioned, the **<command>** is optional; you don't need it if the image has an *Entrypoint* or *Cmd* instruction. If you specify a **<command>**, it will override a *Cmd* instruction but will be appended to an *Entrypoint* instruction.

The following command starts a new background container based on the **Alpine** image and tells it to run the **sleep 20** command, causing it to run for 20 seconds and then exit. The **--rm** flag cleans up the exited container so you don't have to delete it manually.

```
$ docker run --rm -d alpine sleep 20
```

If you run a **docker ps** command before the 20-second sleep timer expires, you'll see the container in the output. If you run it after 20 seconds, the container will be gone. The **--rm** argument automatically cleans up the exited container.

Most production images will specify an Entrypoint or Cmd instruction.

Connecting to a container

You can use the **docker exec** command to execute commands in running containers, and it has two modes:

- Interactive
- Remote execution

Interactive exec sessions connect your terminal to a shell process in the container and behave like remote SSH sessions. Remote execution mode lets you send commands to a running container and prints the output to your local terminal.

Run the following command to start an interactive exec session by creating a new shell process (**sh**) inside the **webserver** container and connecting your terminal to it. The **-it** flag makes it an *interactive exec session*, and the **sh** argument starts a new **sh** process inside the container. **sh** is a minimal shell program installed in the container.

```
$ docker exec -it webserver sh  
/src #
```

Notice how your shell prompt changed. This proves your terminal is connected to the shell process inside the container.

Try executing a few common Linux commands. Some will work, and some won't. This is because container images are usually optimized to be lightweight and don't have all of the normal commands and packages installed. The following example shows a couple of commands — one succeeds, and the other one fails.

The examples list the contents of your current directory and try to edit the **app.py** file with the **vim** editor.

```
/src # ls -l
total 100
-rw-r--r--  1 root  root      324 Feb 20 12:35 Dockerfile
-rw-r--r--  1 root  root      377 Feb 20 12:35 README.md
-rw-r--r--  1 root  root      341 Feb 20 12:35 app.js
drwxr-xr-x 183 root  root    4096 Feb 20 12:41 node_modules
-rw-r--r--  1 root  root    74342 Feb 20 12:41 package-lock.json
-rw-r--r--  1 root  root      404 Feb 20 12:38 package.json
drwxr-xr-x  2 root  root    4096 Feb 20 12:35 views
<Snip>

/src # vim app.js
sh: vim: not found
```

The **vim** command fails because it isn't installed in the container.

Inspecting container processes

Most containers only run a single process. This is the container's main app process and is always PID 1.

Run a **ps** command to see the processes running in your container. You'll need to be connected to the exec session from the previous section for these commands to work.

```
/src # ps
PID  USER      TIME  COMMAND
 1 root      0:00 node ./app.js
13 root      0:00 sh
22 root      0:00 ps
```

The output shows three processes:

- PID 1 is the main application process running the Node.js web app
- PID 13 is the shell process your interactive exec session is connected to
- PID 22 is the **ps** command you just ran

The **ps** process terminated as soon as it displayed the output, and the **sh** process will terminate when you exit the *exec session*. This means the only long-running process is PID 1 running the Node app.

If you kill the container's main process (PID 1), you'll also kill the container. This is because containers only run while their main process is running — when that process is no longer running, there's no reason for the container to run. We'll demonstrate this later.

Type **exit** to quit the exec session and return to your local terminal.

Run another **docker exec** command without specifying the **-it** flags. This will remotely execute the command without creating an interactive session. The format of the command is **docker exec <container> <command>**, and it will only work if the command you're executing is installed in the container.

```
$ docker exec webserver ps
PID   USER      TIME  COMMAND
 1  root      0:00 node ./app.js
 42  root      0:00 ps
```

This time, only two processes are running because you terminated the **sh** process when you typed **exit** to quit the previous interactive exec session.

The **docker inspect** command

You'll absolutely love the **docker inspect** command as it's a treasure trove of detailed information about images and containers.

The following command retrieves full details of the running **webserver** container, and I've snipped the output to highlight a few interesting things. However, I recommend you run the command on your own system and study the full output, as you'll learn a lot.

```
$ docker inspect webserver
<Snip>
{
  "State": {
    "Status": "running"
  },
  "Name": "/webserver",
  "PortBindings": {
    "8080/tcp": [
      {
        "HostIp": "",
        "HostPort": "5005"
      }
    ]
  },
  "RestartPolicy": {
    "Name": "no",
    "MaximumRetryCount": 0
  },
  "Image": "nigelpoulton/ddd-book:web0.1",
  "WorkingDir": "/src",
  "Entrypoint": [
    "node",
    "./app.js"
  ]
}
```

```
  ],
}

<Snip>
```

The snipped output shows the container is *running*, is called **webserver**, is binding port 8080 in the container to 5005 on the host, has no restart policy, and is based on the **nigelpoulton/ddd-book:web0.1** image. The **Entrypoint** block lists the command that automatically runs every time the container starts.

We'll cover this in more detail later, but this container inherited its Entrypoint instruction from the image you started it from. You can verify this by running the following **docker inspect** command against the image. I've snipped the output to highlight the relevant section.

```
$ docker inspect nigelpoulton/ddd-book:web0.1
<Snip>
"Config": {
  "WorkingDir": "/src",
  "Entrypoint": [
    "node",
    "./app.js"
  ],
}
<Snip>
```

I recommend you take time to investigate the output of **docker inspect** commands. You'll learn a lot.

Writing data to a container

In this section, you'll exec onto the **webserver** container and edit the web server configuration to display a new message on the home page. In the next section, you'll stop and restart the container and verify your changes aren't lost.

WARNING: This section is for demonstration purposes only. In the real world, you shouldn't change live containers like this. Any time you need to change a live container, you should create and test a new container with the required changes and then replace the existing container with the new one.

Open a new interactive exec session to the **webserver** container with the following command.

```
$ docker exec -it webserver sh  
/src #
```

The container runs a simple Node.js web app that uses the **views/home.pug** file to build the app's home page.

Run the following command to open the **home.pug** file in the **vi** editor. Windows users can use Notepad or another editor.

```
% vi views/home.pug
```

If you know how to use **vi**, you can go ahead and change the text on line 8 after the **h1** tag to anything you like and save your changes.

Carefully follow these steps if you're not comfortable with **vi**:

1. Press the **i** key to put **vi** into *insert mode*
2. Use the arrow keys to navigate to line 8
3. Use your **delete** key to delete the text **after** the **h1** tag on line 8
4. Type a new message of your choice
5. Press the **escape** key to exit *insert mode* and return to *command mode*
6. type **:wq** and press **enter** save your changes and exit (**:wq** is short for write and quit)

Once you've saved your changes, refresh your browser to see the updates.

Type **exit** to quit the exec session and return to your local terminal.

Congratulations, you've updated the web server config.

Stopping, restarting, and deleting a container

In this section, you'll execute the typical container lifecycle events and see how they impact the changes you've made to the container.

The following commands will only work if you've quit the interactive exec session.

Check your container is still running.

```
$ docker ps
CONTAINER ID   IMAGE          COMMAND       STATUS        PORTS     NAMES
b5594b3b8b3f   nigelpoulton... "node ./app.js"   Up 51 mins   0.0.0.0:80->8080   webserver
```

Stop it with the **docker stop** command. It will take up to 10 seconds to stop gracefully.

```
$ docker stop webserver
webserver
```

Run another **docker ps** command.

```
$ docker ps
CONTAINER ID   IMAGE          COMMAND       CREATED      STATUS        PORTS     NAMES
```

The container no longer shows in the list of running containers. However, you can see it if you run the same command with the **-a** flag to show **all** containers, including stopped ones.

```
$ docker ps -a
CONTAINER ID   IMAGE          COMMAND       STATUS        NAMES
b5594b3b8b3f   nigelpou...   "node ./app.js"   Exited (137) About a minute ago   webserver
```

As you can see in the output, it still exists but is in the **Exited** state. Restart it with the following command.

```
$ docker restart webserver
webserver
```

If you run another **docker ps**, you'll see it in the **Up** state.

Refresh your browser to see if Docker has saved your changes to the home page or reverted to the original.

The container has saved your changes!

You can also run the following command to return the exact contents of the file directly from within the container's filesystem.

```
$ docker exec webserver cat views/home.pug

html
  head
    title='Docker FTW'
    link(rel='stylesheet', href='https://stackpath.bootstrapcdn.com/.....
  body
    div.container
      div.jumbotron
        h1 Everybody loves containers!      <---- I changed this line
<Snip>
```

So far, you've seen that starting and stopping containers doesn't lose changes. You also saw that restarting them is very fast.

Run the following command to delete the container. The **-f** flag forces the operation and doesn't allow the app the usual 10-second grace period to flush buffers and gracefully quit. Be careful forcing operations like this, as Docker doesn't ask you to confirm.

```
$ docker rm webserver -f
webserver
```

Run a **docker ps -a** to see if there's any sign of the container.

```
$ docker ps -a
CONTAINER ID     IMAGE      COMMAND      CREATED      STATUS      PORTS      NAMES
```

All signs of the container are gone and you cannot restart it. You can start a new instance by executing another **docker run** command and specifying the same image, but it won't have the changes you made.

WARNING: As previously mentioned, changing live containers like this is an anti-pattern and you shouldn't do it. We only showed it here to demonstrate how containers work and how changes to the container's filesystem (made to the container's own thin R/W layer) persist across restarts.

Killing a container's main process

Earlier in the chapter, we learned that containers are designed to run a single process, and killing this process also kills the container.

Let's test if that's true.

Run the following command to start a new interactive container called **ddd-ctr** based on the Ubuntu image and tell it to run a Bash shell as its main process.

```
$ docker run --name ddd-ctr -it ubuntu:24.04 bash
Unable to find image 'ubuntu:24.04' locally
24.04: Pulling from library/ubuntu
51ae9e2de052: Download complete
Digest: sha256:ff0b5139e774bb0dee9ca8b572b4d69eaec2795deb8dc47c8c829becd67de41e
Status: Downloaded newer image for ubuntu:24.04
root@d3c892ad0eb3:/#
```

The command pulls the Ubuntu image and attaches your terminal to the container's Bash shell process.

Run a **ps** command to list all running processes.

```
root@d3c892ad0eb3:/# ps
 PID TTY      TIME CMD
  1 pts/0    00:00:00 bash
  9 pts/0    00:00:00 ps
```

PID 1 is the container's main process and is the Bash shell you told the container to run. The other one is the **ps** command and has already exited. This means the Bash process is the only process running in the container.

If you type **exit**, you'll terminate the Bash process **and** kill the container. This is because containers only run while their main process executes.

Test this by typing **exit** to return to your local terminal and then running a **docker ps -a** command to see if the container terminated.

```
root@d3c892ad0eb3:/# exit

$ docker ps -a
CONTAINER ID   IMAGE      COMMAND   STATUS          NAMES
d3c892ad0eb3   ubuntu:24.04 "bash"   Exited (0) 3 secs ago   ddd-ctr
```

As expected, the container is in the *exited* state and not running. However, you can run the following two commands to restart it and attach your shell to its main process.

```
$ docker restart ddd-ctr
ddd-ctr

$ docker attach ddd-ctr
root@d3c892ad0eb3:/#
```

Your terminal is once again attached to the Bash shell in the container.

You can type **Ctrl P Q** to exit a container without killing the process you're attached to.

Type **Ctrl P Q** to exit the container and run another **docker ps** command to verify the container is still running this time.

```
root@d3c892ad0eb3:/# <Ctrl PQ>
read escape sequence

$ docker ps
CONTAINER ID   IMAGE      COMMAND   STATUS    NAMES
d3c892ad0eb3   ubuntu:24.04 "bash"    Up 27 seconds   ddd-ctr
```

The container is still up.

Now that you know how to exit containers without killing them, let's switch focus and see how to use *Docker Debug* to debug slim containers and images.

Debugging slim images and containers with Docker Debug

At the time of writing, Docker Debug is a new tool and requires a Pro, Team, or Business subscription.

It's a widely accepted good practice to deploy small images containing only app code and dependencies. This means no shell or debugging tools and is a big part of making images and containers small and secure. However, it also makes it difficult to debug them when things go wrong.

This is where **Docker Debug** comes to the rescue by allowing you to get shell access to images and containers that don't include a shell and seamlessly injecting powerful debugging tools into them.

At a high level, Docker Debug works by attaching a shell to a container and mounting a toolbox loaded with debugging tools. This *toolbox* is mounted as a directory called **/nix** and is available during your debugging session but is never visible to the container. As soon as you exit the Docker Debug session, the **/nix** directory is removed. If you're debugging a running container, any changes you make are immediately visible to the container and persist across container restarts. For example, updating an **index.html** during a Docker Debug session will immediately update the running web app, and the changes will persist if the container is stopped and restarted. If you're debugging an image or stopped container, the Docker Debug session creates a debug sandbox and adds it to the image as a R/W layer to make it feel like a running container. However, changes you make while debugging an image or stopped container are **not** persisted and are lost as soon as you quit the debug session.

If you've been following along, you'll have a running container called **ddd-ctr**. If you don't, you can start one by running **docker run --name ddd-ctr -it ubuntu:24.04 bash**.

Run the following commands to attach to the container and see if it has any debugging tools. The following **docker attach** command is similar to the **docker exec** commands you learned earlier but automatically connects to a container's main process. You don't need to run the **docker attach** command if you're already connected to the container.

```
$ docker attach ddd-ctr
root@d3c892ad0eb3:/#
root@d3c892ad0eb3:/# ping nigelpoulton.com
bash: ping: command not found

root@d3c892ad0eb3:/# nslookup nigelpoulton.com
bash: nslookup: command not found

root@d3c892ad0eb3:/# vim
bash: vim: command not found
```

The commands all failed because none of the tools are installed in this container. This would make debugging this container difficult without Docker Debug.

Type **Ctrl + Q** to gracefully disconnect from the container without killing the Bash process.

In the following steps, you'll use Docker Debug to get a shell session to the container and run commands that aren't installed in the container. You can even use Docker Debug to get shell access to containers and images that don't include a shell.

You need to log in to Docker to use Docker Debug, and it only works if you have a Pro, Team, or Business license.

```
$ docker login
Authenticating with existing credentials...
Login Succeeded
```

Run the following command to check if you have the Docker Debug CLI plugin. All modern versions of Docker Desktop include this by default. Other Docker installations may not have it, and you'll have to install it manually.

```
$ docker info
Client:
Version: 26.1.1
Context: desktop-linux
Debug Mode: false
Plugins:
debug: Get a shell into any image or container. (Docker Inc.)
  Version: 0.0.29
  Path: /Users/nigelpoulton/.docker/cli-plugins/docker-debug
<Snip>
```

Once you're logged in and have the plugin installed, you're ready to use Docker Debug.

The format of the command is **docker debug <image>|<container>**. We'll open a Docker Debug session to the running container called **ddd-ctr**.

```
$ docker debug ddd-ctr
```



This is an attach shell, i.e.:

- Any changes to the container filesystem are visible to the container directly.
- The /nix directory is invisible to the actual container.

Version: 0.0.29 (BETA)

```
root@d3c892ad0eb3 / [ddd-ctr]
docker >
```

You've successfully connected to the running container and got a new shell prompt (**docker >**). You also got some helpful info displaying the short ID and name of the container you're debugging, as well as a reminder that any changes you make will be visible to the container.

Try running the **ping**, **nslookup**, and **vim** commands that failed in the previous section. If you get stuck in the **vim** session, just type **:q** and press **Enter**.

```
docker > ping nigelpoulton.com
PING nigelpoulton.com (192.124.249.126) 56(84) bytes of data.
64 bytes from cloudproxy10126.sucuri.net (192.124.249.126): icmp_seq=1 ttl=63 time=211 ms
64 bytes from cloudproxy10126.sucuri.net (192.124.249.126): icmp_seq=2 ttl=63 time=58.3 ms
^C

docker > nslookup nigelpoulton.com
zsh: command not found: nslookup

docker > vim
~          VIM - Vi IMproved
~          version 9.0.1441
~          by Bram Moolenaar et al.
~          Vim is open source and freely distributable
<Snip>
:q
```

The **ping** and **vim** commands worked, but the **nslookup** still failed. This is because the default Docker Debug *toolbox* includes **ping** and **vim** but doesn't include **nslookup**. Don't worry, though. You can use Docker Debug's built-in **install** command to add any package listed on search.nixos.org.

Run the following command to install the **bind** package (which includes the **nslookup** tool), and then run the **nslookup** command again.

```
docker > install bind
Tip: You can install any package available at: https://search.nixos.org/packages.
installing 'bind-9.18.19'
<Snip>

docker > nslookup nigelpoulton.com
Server:           192.168.65.7
Address:          192.168.65.7#53

Non-authoritative answer:
Name:      nigelpoulton.com
Address: 192.124.249.126
```

The command worked, and **nslookup** is now installed in your *toolbox* and will be available in future Docker Debug sessions.

Congratulations, you've used Docker Debug to attach to a running container and run troubleshooting commands that aren't part of the container. You've also seen how to install additional tools to your Docker Debug toolbox. Remember, any changes you make to running containers are immediately visible to the container and persist after you close the session.

Type **exit** to terminate the debug session and return to your local shell.

Run the following command to create a new Docker Debug session that debugs the **nigelpoulton/ddd-book:web0.1** image. Docker will automatically pull the image from Docker Hub if you don't have a local copy.

```
$ docker debug nigelpoulton/ddd-book:web0.1
```



```
Note: This is a sandbox shell. All changes will not affect the actual image.  
Version: 0.0.29 (BETA)  
root@3f5b281b914b /src [nigelpoulton/ddd-book:web0.1]  
docker >
```

Notice the different message this time. Debugging images creates a *sandbox shell* and changes won't affect the actual image. This reminds you that debugging images and stopped containers behaves differently from debugging running containers:

- Changes made while debugging a live container are persisted
- Changes made while debugging images or stopped containers are deleted when you quit the debug session

Run an **nslookup** command to prove the tool is saved to your toolbox and available for use without re-installing.

```
docker > nslookup craigalanson.com  
Server:           192.168.65.7  
Address:         192.168.65.7#53  
  
Non-authoritative answer:  
Name:           craigalanson.com  
Address:        198.185.159.144  
<Snip>
```

Docker Debug has a built-in **entrypoint** command that lets you print, lint, and test an image or container's *Entrypoint* or *Cmd* command. These are the commands Docker executes to start the container's app.

Run the following **entrypoint** command to reveal the default command this container will run when it starts.

```
docker > entrypoint --print
node ./app.js
```

The **entrypoint** command is clever enough to look for Entrypoint **and** Cmd instructions.

Type **exit** to quit the debug session.

In summary, Docker Debug is a new tool for debugging *slim* images and containers. It gets you shell access to containers and images that don't include a shell, and you can run troubleshooting tools that aren't available in the container or image. Any changes you make to *running containers* take immediate effect and persist across stop and restart operations. However, changes made while debugging *images and stopped containers* are lost when you close the session. In all cases, the tools you install and use are never part of the container or image.

Self-healing containers with restart policies

Container *restart policies* are a simple form of self-healing that allows the local Docker Engine to automatically restart failed containers.

You apply *restart policies* per container, and Docker supports the following four policies:

- **no** (default)
- **on-failure**
- **always**
- **unless-stopped**

The following table shows how each policy reacts to different scenarios. A **Y** indicates the policy will attempt a container restart, whereas an **N** indicates it won't.

Restart policy	Nonzero exit code	Zero exit code	docker stop command	Restart when Daemon restarts
no	N	N	N	N
on-failure	Y	N	N	Y
always	Y	Y	N	Y
unless-stopped	Y	Y	N	N

Non-zero exit codes indicate a failure occurred. Zero exit codes indicate the container exited normally without an error.

We'll demo some examples, but you should also do your own testing.

Let's demonstrate the **always** policy by starting a new interactive container with the **--restart always** flag and telling it to run a shell process. We'll then type **exit** to kill the shell process and the container to see what happens.

Run the following command to start an interactive container called **neversaydie** with the **always** restart policy.

```
$ docker run --name neversaydie -it --restart always alpine sh  
/#
```

Your terminal will automatically connect to the shell process inside the container.

Type **exit** to kill the shell process and return to your local terminal. This will cause the container to exit with a zero exit code, indicating a normal exit without any failures.

According to the previous table, the **always** restart policy should automatically restart the container.

Run a **docker ps** command to see if this happened.

```
$ docker ps  
CONTAINER ID IMAGE COMMAND CREATED STATUS NAMES  
1933623830bb alpine "sh" 15 seconds ago Up 2 seconds neversaydie
```

The container is running as expected. However, you can see it was created 15 seconds ago but has only been running for 2 seconds. This is because you forced it to exit when you killed the shell process, and then Docker automatically restarted it. It's also important to know that Docker restarted the same container and didn't create a new one. In fact, if you run a **docker inspect** against it, you'll see the **RestartCount** has been incremented to 1. Remember to replace **grep** with to replace **grep** with **Select-String -Pattern 'RestartCount'** if you're on Windows using PowerShell.

```
$ docker inspect neversaydie | grep RestartCount  
"RestartCount": 1,
```

An interesting feature of the **--restart always** policy is that if you stop a container with **docker stop** and then restart the Docker daemon, Docker will restart the container when the daemon comes up. To be clear:

1. You start a new container with the **--restart always** policy
2. You manually stop it with the **docker stop** command
3. You restart Docker (or an event causes Docker to restart)
4. When Docker comes back up, it starts the *stopped container*

If you don't want this behavior, you should try the **unless-stopped** policy.

If you are working with Docker Compose or Docker Stacks, you can apply restart policies to *services* as follows. We'll cover these in more detail in later chapters.

```
services:
myservice:
<Snip>
restart_policy:
  condition: always | unless-stopped | on-failure
```

Clean up

You can run **docker images** and **docker ps -a** commands to see the images you pulled and the containers you created as part of this chapter. Your output will be similar to this.

```
$ docker images
REPOSITORY          TAG      IMAGE ID      CREATED       SIZE
nigelpoulton/ddd-book    web0.1   3f5b281b914b  4 days ago   159MB
ubuntu              24.04    ff0b5139e774  13 days ago  138MB
alpine              latest    c5b1261d6d3e  4 weeks ago  11.8MB

$ docker ps -a
CONTAINER ID        IMAGE           COMMAND      CREATED       STATUS        NAMES
ac165419214f        alpine          "sh"        33 secs ago  Up 24 seconds  neversaydie
5bd3741185fa        ubuntu:24.04    "bash"      3 mins ago   Exited (0) ~1min ago  ddd-ctr
```

You can delete individual containers with the **docker rm <container> -f** command and images with the **docker rmi** command, and you should always delete containers before images.

You can also delete **all containers** and **all images** with the following two commands. Be warned though, they don't prompt you for confirmation.

```
$ docker rm $(docker ps -aq) -f
ac165419214f
5bd3741185fa

$ docker rmi $(docker images -q)
Untagged: nigelpoulton/ddd-book:web0.1
Deleted: sha256:3f5b281b914b1e39df8a1fbc189270a5672ff9e98bfac03193b42d1c02c43ef0
Untagged: ubuntu:24.04
Deleted: sha256:ff0b5139e774bb0dee9ca8b572b4d69eaec2795deb8dc47c8c829becd67de41e
Untagged: alpine:latest
Deleted: sha256:c5b1261d6d3e43071626931fc004f70149baeba2c8ec672bd4f27761f8e1ad6b
```

Both commands work by passing a list of all container/image IDs to the delete command.

Containers – The commands

- **docker run** is the command to start new containers. You give it the name of an image and it starts a container from it. This example starts an interactive container from the Ubuntu image and tells it to run the Bash shell: **docker run -it ubuntu bash**.
- **Ctrl-PQ** is how you detach from a container without killing the process you’re attached to. You’ll use it frequently to detach from running containers without killing them.
- **docker ps** lists all running containers, and you can add the **-a** flag to also see containers in the stopped (**Exited**) state.
- **docker exec** allows you to run commands inside containers. The following command will start a new Bash shell inside a running container and connect your terminal to it: **docker exec -it <container-name> bash**. For this to work, the container must include the Bash shell. This command runs a **ps** command inside a running container without opening an interactive shell session: **docker exec <container-name> ps**.
- **docker stop** stops a running container and puts it in the **Exited (137)** state. It issues a *SIGTERM* to the container’s PID 1 process and allows the container 10 seconds to gracefully quit. If the process hasn’t cleaned up and stopped within 10 seconds, it sends a *SIGKILL* to force the container to immediately terminate.
- **docker restart** restarts a stopped container.
- **docker rm** deletes a stopped container. You can add the **-f** flag to delete the container without having to stop it first.
- **docker inspect** shows you detailed configuration and run-time information about a container.
- **docker debug** attaches a debug shell to a container or image and lets you run commands that aren’t available inside the container or image. It requires a Pro, Team, or Business Docker subscription.

Chapter summary

In this chapter, you learned some of the major differences between VMs and containers, including that containers are smaller, faster, and more portable.

You learned how to start, stop, and restart containers with the **docker** CLI, and you saw that changes to a container’s filesystem persist across restarts.

You learned that containers run a single process and cannot run if this process is killed. You also saw the three ways of telling a container which app to run and how to start it — via Entrypoint or Cmd instructions in the image metadata or via the **docker run** CLI.

You learned about the new Docker Debug tool and how it allows you to get a shell to slim containers and run troubleshooting commands that don't exist in the container.

Finally, you learned how to attach restart policies to containers and how the different restart policies work.

8: Containerizing an app

Docker makes it easy to package applications as images and run them as containers. We call this process *containerization*, and this chapter will walk you through the entire process.

I've divided the chapter as follows:

- Containerizing an app – The TLDR
- Containerize a single-container app
- Moving to production with multi-stage-builds
- Buildx, BuildKit, drivers, and Build Cloud
- Multi-architecture builds
- A few good practices

Containerizing an app – The TLDR

Docker aims to make it easy to *build*, *ship*, and *run* applications. We call this *containerization* and the process looks like this:

1. Write your applications and create the list of dependencies
2. Create a *Dockerfile* that tells Docker how to build and run the app
3. Build the app into an image
4. Push the image to a registry (optional)
5. Run a container from the image

You can see these five steps in Figure 8.1.

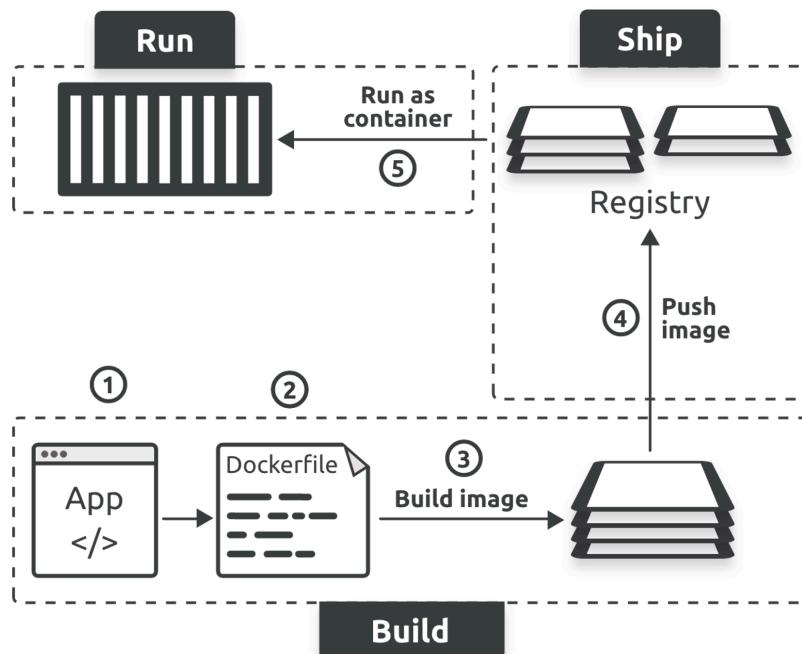


Figure 8.1 - Basic flow of containerizing an app

Containerize a single-container app

In this section, you'll complete the following steps to containerize a simple Node.js app:

- Get the application code from GitHub
- Create the Dockerfile
- Containerize the app
- Run the app
- Test the app
- Look a bit closer

I recommend you follow along with Docker Desktop. This is because we'll be using the new `docker init` command, which might not be installed on other versions of Docker. Don't worry if you don't have access to a Docker installation with the `docker init` plugin, you can manually copy the Dockerfile and follow the rest of the examples.

Get the application code

The application we'll use is a simple Node.js web app that serves a web page on port 8080.

If you still need to clone the repo, run the following command to clone it. You'll need **git** installed, and it will create a new directory called **ddd-book**.

```
$ git clone https://github.com/nigelpoulton/ddd-book.git

Cloning into 'ddd-book'...
remote: Enumerating objects: 47, done.
remote: Counting objects: 100% (47/47), done.
remote: Compressing objects: 100% (32/32), done.
remote: Total 47 (delta 11), reused 44 (delta 11), pack-reused 0
Receiving objects: 100% (47/47), 167.30 KiB | 1.66 MiB/s, done.
Resolving deltas: 100% (11/11), done.
```

Change into the **ddd-book/node-app** directory and list its contents.

```
$ cd ddd-book/node-app

$ ls -l
total 98
-rw-r--r--@ 1 nigelpoulton staff 341 20 Feb 12:35 app.js
drwxr-xr-x 103 nigelpoulton staff 3296 12 Mar 16:18 node_modules
-rw-r--r-- 1 nigelpoulton staff 39975 12 Mar 16:18 package-lock.json
-rw-r--r--@ 1 nigelpoulton staff 355 8 Mar 10:10 package.json
drwxr-xr-x 3 nigelpoulton staff 96 20 Feb 12:35 views
```

This directory is your *build context* because it contains the application source code and the files listing dependencies.

Let's create the Dockerfile.

Create the Dockerfile

In the past, you had to create Dockerfiles manually. Fortunately, newer versions of Docker support the **docker init** command that analyses applications and automatically creates Dockerfiles that implement good practices.

Run the following command to create a Dockerfile for the app. If your Docker installation doesn't have the **docker init** plugin, you'll have to skip this step.

Feel free to accept a newer version of Node.js, but complete all other prompts as shown. You'll need to run it from the **node-app** directory.

```
$ docker init
Welcome to the Docker Init CLI!
<Snip>
? What application platform does your project use? Node
? What version of Node do you want to use? 20.8.0      <----- Newer versions are OK
? Which package manager do you want to use? npm
? What command do you want to use to start the app? node app.js
? What port does your server listen on? 8080

CREATED: .dockerignore
CREATED: Dockerfile
CREATED: compose.yaml
CREATED: README.Docker.md

✖ Your Docker files are ready!
```

The process created a new Dockerfile and placed it in your current directory. It looks like this.

```
1. ARG NODE_VERSION=20.8.0
2. FROM node:${NODE_VERSION}-alpine
3. ENV NODE_ENV production
4. WORKDIR /usr/src/app
5. RUN --mount=type=bind,source=package.json,target=package.json \
    --mount=type=bind,source=package-lock.json,target=package-lock.json \
    --mount=type=cache,target=/root/.npm \
    npm ci --omit=dev
6. USER node
7. COPY .
8. EXPOSE 8080
9. CMD node app.js
```

Lines 1 and 2 tell Docker to pull the **node:20.8.0-alpine** image and use it as the base for the new image.

Line 3 tells Node to run in *production* mode. This is a Node.js optimization that increases performance while minimizing logging and other common development features.

Line 4 sets the working directory for the remaining steps. For example, the **RUN** and **COPY** instructions on lines 5 and 7 will run against the **WORKDIR** directory, as will the **node app.js** command on line 9.

Line 5 bind mounts the dependency files and installs them with the **npm ci --omit-dev** command.

Line 6 ensures Node.js runs the app as a non-root user.

Line 7 copies the application's source code from your build context (the first period) into the **WORKDIR** directory (the second period) inside the image.

Line 8 documents the application's network port.

Line 9 is the command Docker will execute whenever it starts a container from the image.

You now have everything Docker needs to build the application into a container image — source code, dependencies, and a Dockerfile.

Containerize the app

In this section, you'll build the application into a container image.

If your Docker installation doesn't have the **docker init** plugin and you didn't follow the previous step, you'll need to rename the **sample-Dockerfile** to **Dockerfile** before continuing.

Run the following command to build a new image called **ddd-book:ch8.node**. Be sure to include the trailing period (.) as this tells Docker to use your current working directory as the *build context*. Remember, the *build context* is the directory where your app files live.

```
$ docker build -t ddd-book:ch8.node .

[+] Building 16.2s (12/12) FINISHED
=> [internal] load build definition from Dockerfile          0.0s
=> => transferring dockerfile: 1.21kB                      0.0s
=> => transferring context: 659B                         0.0s
=> [stage-0 1/4] FROM docker.io/library/node:20.8.0-alpine   3s  <<---- Base layer
=> [stage-0 2/4] WORKDIR /usr/src/app                      0.2s  <<---- New layer
=> [stage-0 3/4] RUN --mount=type=bind,source=package...     1.1s  <<---- New layer
=> [stage-0 4/4] COPY . .                                     0.1s  <<---- New layer
=> exporting to image                                       0.2s
=> => exporting layers                                      0.2s
=> => writing image sha256:f282569b8bd0f0...016cc1adafcf91  0.0s
=> => naming to docker.io/library/ddd-book:ch8.node
```

I've snipped the output, but you can see four numbered steps that created four image layers.

Check that the image exists in your Docker host's local repository.

```
$ docker images
REPO          TAG          IMAGE ID      CREATED       SIZE
ddd-book      ch8.node     24dd040fa06b  18 minutes ago  268MB
```

Congratulations, you've containerized the app as an OCI image!

Run a **docker inspect ddd-book:ch8.node** command to verify the image and see the settings from the Dockerfile. You should be able to see the image layers and metadata such as the **Exposed Ports**, **WorkingDir**, and **Entrypoint** values.

```
$ docker inspect ddd-book:ch8.node
[
{
  "Id": "sha256:24dd040fa06baf6e40144c5a59f99a749159a932ecebb737751f7f862963527a",
  "RepoTags": [
    "ddd-book:ch8.node"
    <Snip>
    "ExposedPorts": {
      "8080/tcp": {}
    }
    "WorkingDir": "/usr/src/app",
    "Cmd": [
      "/bin/sh",
      "-c",
      "node app.js"
    ],
    <Snip>
    "Layers": [
      "sha256:5f4d9fc4d98de91820d2a9c81e501c8cc6429bc8758b43fcbb2cd50f4cab9a324",
      "sha256:6b20c4e93dbab9786f96268bbe32c208d385f2c4490a278ad3b1e55cc79480e4",
      "sha256:012c308a78ec993a47fdb7c4c6d17b53d8ce2649a463be28ae5c48ab1af2e039",
      "sha256:35a839ac7cc922af896a0297e692141c77ed6e03eff6a70db13bb23f6cd4f8f",
      "sha256:918caa8070410ccfb2c5b3b4d62ca66742c46bf21fe0bd433738b7796c530e68",
      "sha256:a48b3b3d0c5a693840e7e4abd7971f130b4447573483628bcb996091e1e8e8b8",
      "sha256:ea2d4594dbbef4009441a33dd1dd4c5076d7fe09a171381a6b7583605569dd11"
    ]
  <Snip>
}
```

You might wonder why the image has seven layers when only four Dockerfile instructions created layers. This is because the **node:20.8.0-alpine** base image already had four layers. Therefore, the **FROM** instruction pulled a base image with four layers, and then the **WORKDIR**, **RUN** and **COPY** instructions added three more layers. You can see this in Figure 8.2.

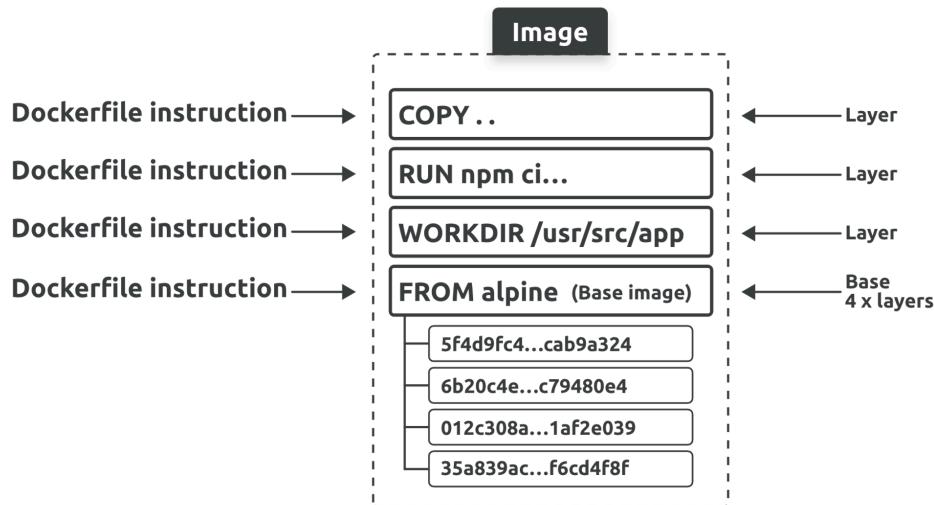


Figure 8.2 - Dockerfile and image layers

Push the image to Docker Hub

This is an optional section, and you'll need a Docker Hub account to follow along. Go to hub.docker.com and sign up for one now; they're free.

You'll complete the following steps:

1. Login to Docker Hub
2. Re-tag the image
3. Push the image

After creating images, you'll normally push them to a registry where you can keep them safe and make them accessible to teammates and clients. Lots of registries exist, but Docker Hub is the most common public registry and is where Docker pushes images by default.

Log in to Docker Hub.

```
$ docker login
Login with your Docker ID to push and pull images from Docker Hub.
Username: nigelpoulton
Password:
WARNING! Your password will be stored unencrypted in /home/ubuntu/.docker/config.json.
Configure a credential helper to remove this warning.
```

Once logged in, you need to re-tag the image. This is because Docker uses information from the image tag to determine which registry and repository to push it to.

If you run a **docker images** command, you'll see an image tagged as **ddd-book:ch8.node**. If you push this image, Docker will try to push it to a repository called **ddd-book** on Docker Hub. However, no such repository exists, and the command will fail.

Run the following command to re-tag the image to include your Docker ID. The format of the command is **docker tag <current-tag> <new-tag>**, and it creates an additional tag for the same image.

```
$ docker tag ddd-book:ch8.node nigelpoulton/ddd-book:ch8.node
```

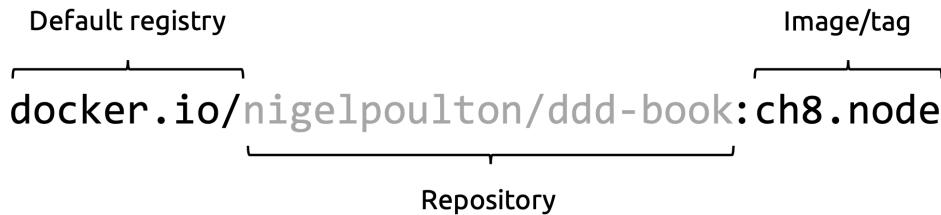
Run another **docker images** command to see the image with both tags. Notice how everything is identical except the **REPO** column. This is because it's the same image with different names.

```
$ docker images
REPO                  TAG      IMAGE ID      CREATED      SIZE
nigelpoulton/ddd-book  ch8.node  24dd040fa06b  38 minutes ago  268MB
ddd-book               ch8.node  24dd040fa06b  38 minutes ago  268MB
```

Push it to Docker Hub. You'll need to be logged in with your Docker ID for this to work.

```
$ docker push nigelpoulton/ddd-book:ch8.node
The push refers to repository [docker.io/nigelpoulton/ddd-book]
e4ef261755c8: Pushed
d25f74b85615: Pushed
7e1aebde141d: Pushed
7b3f8039e3c4: Pushed
2a2799ae89a2: Mounted from library/node
4927cb899c33: Mounted from library/node
579b34f0a95b: Pushed
ced319b3ffb5: Pushed
ch8.node: digest: sha256:24dd040fa06baf...1f7f862963527a size: 856
```

Figure 8.3 shows how Docker figured out where to push the image.

**Figure 8.3**

Now that you've pushed the image to a registry, you can access it from anywhere with an internet connection. You can also grant other people access to pull it and push changes.

Run the app

As previously mentioned, the application is a web server that listens on port 8080.

Run the following command to start it as a container. You'll have to delete the **nigelpoulton** image prefix or replace it with your ID.

```
$ docker run -d --name c1 \
-p 5005:8080 \
nigelpoulton/ddd-book:ch8.node
```

The **-d** flag runs the container in the background, and the **--name** flag calls it **c1**. The **-p 5005:8080** maps port 5005 on your Docker host to port 8080 inside the container, which means you'll be able to point a browser to port 5005 and reach the app. The last line tells Docker to base the container on the **nigelpoulton/ddd-book:ch8.node** image you just built.

Docker will use the local copy of the image from the previous steps. It only pulls a copy from Docker Hub if it doesn't have a local copy.

Check the container is running and verify the port mapping.

```
$ docker ps
```

ID	IMAGE	COMMAND	STATUS	PORTS	NAMES
49..	ddd-book:ch8.node	"node ./app.js"	UP 6 secs	0.0.0.0:5005->8080/tcp	c1

I've snipped the output for readability, but the container is running, and port 5005 is mapped on all the Docker host's interfaces (0.0.0.0:5005).

Test the app

Open a web browser and point it to the DNS name or IP address of your Docker host on port 5005. If you’re using Docker Desktop or a similar local environment, you can connect to `localhost:5005`. Otherwise, use the IP or DNS of the Docker host on port 5005.

You should see the app as shown in Figure 8.4.

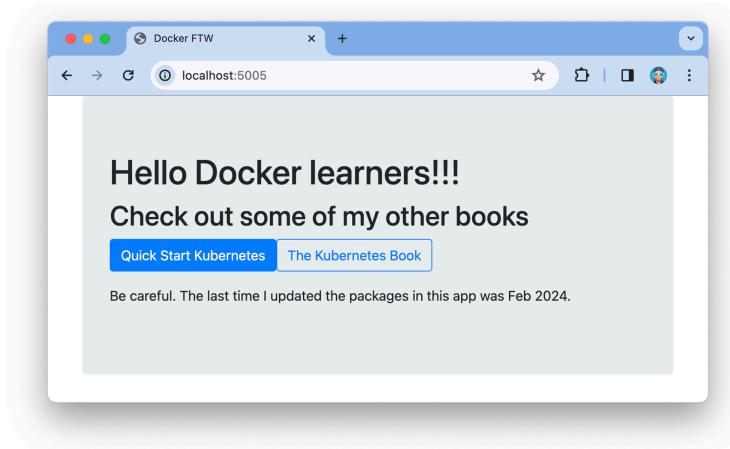


Figure 8.4

You can try the following if it doesn’t work:

1. Run a `docker ps` command to ensure the `c1` container is running
2. Check port mapping is correct — `0.0.0.0:5005->8080/tcp`
3. Check that firewall and other network security settings aren’t blocking traffic to your Docker host on port 5005

Congratulations, the application is containerized and running as a container!

Looking a bit closer

Now that you’ve containerized the application let’s take a closer look at how some of the machinery works.

The `docker build` command parses the Dockerfile one line at a time, starting from the top.

You can insert comments by starting a line with the `#` character, and the builder will ignore them.

All non-comment lines are called *instructions* or *steps* and take the format **<INSTRUCTION>** **<arguments>**. Instruction names are not case-sensitive, but it's common to write them in **UPPERCASE** to make them easier to read.

Some instructions create new layers, whereas others add metadata.

Examples of instructions that create new layers are **FROM**, **RUN**, **COPY** and **WORKDIR**. Examples that create metadata include **EXPOSE**, **ENV**, **CMD**, and **ENTRYPOINT**. The premise is this:

- Instructions that add *content*, such as files and programs, create new layers
- Instructions that don't add content don't add layers and only create metadata

You can run a **docker history** command against any image to see the instructions that created it.

```
$ docker history ddd-book:ch8.node
```

IMAGE	CREATED BY	SIZE	
24dd...a06b	CMD ["/bin/sh" "-c" "node app.js"]	0B	buildkit.dockerfile.v0
<missing>	EXPOSE map[8080/tcp:{}]	0B	buildkit.dockerfile.v0
<missing>	COPY . . # buildkit	86kB	buildkit.dockerfile.v0
<missing>	USER node	0B	buildkit.dockerfile.v0
<missing>	RUN /bin/sh -c npm ci --omit=dev # buildkit	12.8MB	buildkit.dockerfile.v0
<missing>	WORKDIR /usr/src/app	16.4kB	buildkit.dockerfile.v0
<missing>	ENV NODE_ENV=production	0B	buildkit.dockerfile.v0
<missing>	/bin/sh -c #(nop) CMD ["node"]	0B	buildkit.dockerfile.v0
<Snip>			
<missing>	/bin/sh -c #(nop) ADD file:ff3112828967e8...	8.35MB	

A few things are worth noting from the output.

The bottom few lines that I've snipped from the book related to the history of the **node:20.8.0-alpine** base image that was pulled by the **FROM** instruction.

All lines ending with **buildkit.dockerfile.v0** relate to instructions from the Dockerfile used to build the image.

The **CREATED BY** column lists the exact Dockerfile instruction that created the layer or metadata.

Lines with a non-zero value in the **SIZE** column created new layers, whereas the lines with **0B** only added metadata. In this example, three lines/instructions created layers.

Run a **docker inspect** to see the list of image layers.

```
$ docker inspect ddd-book:ch8.node

<Snip>
},
"RootFS": {
  "Type": "layers",
  "Layers": [
    "sha256:5f4d9fc4d98de91820d2a9c81e501c8cc6429bc8758b43fc2cd50f4cab9a324",
    "sha256:6b20c4e93dbab9786f96268bbe32c208d385f2c4490a278ad3b1e55cc79480e4",
    "sha256:012c308a78ec993a47fdb7c4c6d17b53d8ce2649a463be28ae5c48ab1af2e039",
    "sha256:35a839ac7cc922af896a0297e692141c77ed6e03eff6a70db13bb23f6cd4f8f",
    "sha256:918caa8070410ccfb2c5b3b4d62ca66742c46bf21fe0bd433738b7796c530e68",
    "sha256:a48b3b3d0c5a693840e7e4abd7971f130b4447573483628bcb996091e1e8e8b8",
    "sha256:ea2d4594dbbef4009441a33dd1dd4c5076d7fe09a171381a6b7583605569dd11"
  ]
},
}
```

As previously mentioned, the output shows seven layers because the base image had four layers, and the Dockerfile added three more.

Figure 8.5 maps the Dockerfile instructions to image layers. The bold instructions with arrows create layers; the others create metadata. The layer IDs will be different in your environment.

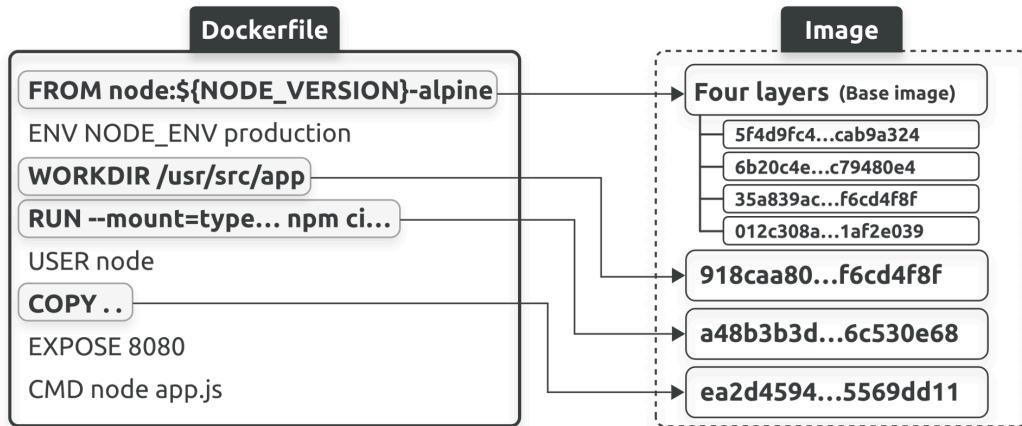


Figure 8.5

Note: Older builders didn't create a layer for **WORKDIR** instructions. However, the instruction modifies filesystem permissions and the current builder creates a very small layer. This behavior may change in the future.

It's generally considered a good practice to use *Docker Official Images* and *Verified Publisher* images as the *base layer* for new images you create. This is because they maintain a

high standard and quickly implement fixes for known vulnerabilities.

Moving to production with multi-stage builds

When it comes to container images... *big is bad!* For example:

- Big means slow
- Big means more potential vulnerabilities
- Big means a larger attack surface

For these reasons, your container images should only contain the stuff **needed** to run your applications in production.

This is where *multi-stage builds* come into play.

At a high level, multi-stage builds use a single Dockerfile with multiple **FROM** instructions — each **FROM** instruction represents a new *build stage*. This allows you to have a *stage* where you do the heavy lifting of building the app inside a large image with compilers and other build tools, but then you have another stage where you copy the compiled app into a slim image for production. The builder can even run different stages in parallel for faster builds.

Figure 8.6 shows a high-level workflow. Stage 1 builds an image with all the required build and compilation tools. Stage 2 copies the app code into the image and builds it. Stage 3 creates a small production-ready image containing only the compiled app and anything needed to run it.

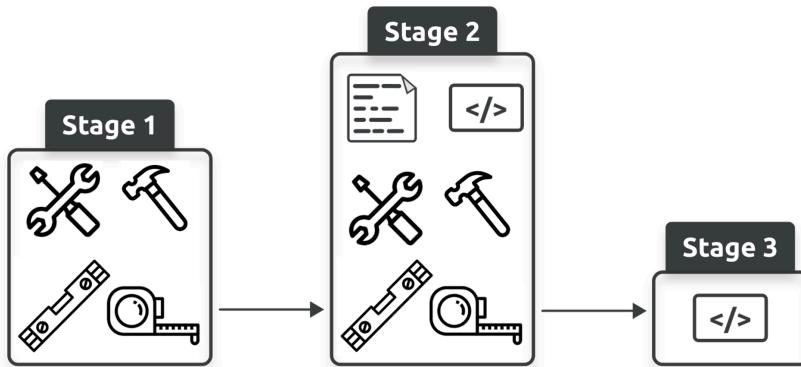


Figure 8.6

Let's look at an example!

We'll work with the code in the **multi-stage** folder of the book's GitHub repo. It's a simple Go app with a client and server borrowed from the *Docker samples buildme* repo on GitHub. Don't worry if you're not a Go programmer; you don't need to be. You only need to know that it compiles the *client* and *server* apps into executable files that **do not** need the Go language or any other tools or runtimes to execute.

Here's the Dockerfile:

```
FROM golang:1.22.1-alpine AS base           <<---- Stage 0
WORKDIR /src
COPY go.mod go.sum .
RUN go mod download
COPY .

FROM base AS build-client                  <<---- Stage 1
RUN go build -o /bin/client ./cmd/client

FROM base AS build-server                  <<---- Stage 2
RUN go build -o /bin/server ./cmd/server

FROM scratch AS prod                      <<---- Stage 3
COPY --from=build-client /bin/client /bin/
COPY --from=build-server /bin/server /bin/
ENTRYPOINT [ "/bin/server" ]
```

The first thing to note is that there are four **FROM** instructions. Each of these is a distinct *build stage*, and Docker numbers them starting from 0. However, we've given each stage a friendly name:

- Stage 0 is called **base** and builds an image with compilation tools, etc
- Stage 1 is called **build-client** and compiles the client executable
- Stage 2 is called **build-server** and compiles the server executable
- Stage 3 is called **prod** and copies the client and server executables into a slim image

Each stage outputs an intermediate image that later stages can use. However, Docker deletes them when the final stage completes.

The goal of the **base** stage is to create a reusable build image with all the tools stages 1 and 2 need to build the client and server applications. The image created by this stage is only used to compile the executables and not for production. It pulls the **golang:1.22.1-alpine** image, which is over 300MB when uncompressed. It sets the working directory to **/src** and copies in the **go.mod** and **go.sum** files from your working directory. These files list the application dependencies and hashes. After that, it uses the **RUN** instruction to install the dependencies and then the **COPY** instruction to copy the application source code into the image. All of this creates a large image with three layers

containing a lot of build stuff but not much app stuff. When this build stage completes, it outputs a large image that later stages can use.

The **build-client** stage doesn't pull a new image. Instead, it uses the **FROM base AS build-client** instruction to use the intermediate image created by the **base** stage. It then issues a **RUN** instruction to compile the client app into a binary executable. The goal of this stage is to create an image with the compiled *client* binary that can be referenced by later stages.

The **build-server** stage does the same for the *server* component and outputs a similar image for use by later stages.

The **prod** stage pulls the minimal **scratch** image. It then runs two **COPY --from** instructions to copy the compiled *client app* from the **build-client** stage and the compiled *server app* from the **build-server** stage. It then tells Docker to run the server app when it's started as a container. This stage outputs the final production image containing just the client and server binaries inside a tiny scratch image and the metadata telling Docker how to start the app.

The builder will run the **base** stage first, then run the **build-client** and **build-server** stages in parallel, and finally run the **prod** stage.

It will always attempt to run stages in parallel, but it can only do this when no dependency exists. For example, the **build-client** and **build-server** stages depend on the **base** stage and cannot run until that stage completes (both start with **FROM base...**). However, the **build-client** and **build-server** can run in parallel because they don't depend on each other. To work out if build stages can run in parallel, start reading the Dockerfile from the top and check if the **FROM** instructions reference other **FROM** instructions immediately before or after — if they do, they can't run in parallel.

Let's see it in action.

Change into the **multi-stage** directory and verify the Dockerfile and associated app files exist.

```
$ ls -l
total 28
-rw-rw-r-- 1 ubuntu ubuntu  368 Mar 25 10:09 Dockerfile
-rw-rw-r-- 1 ubuntu ubuntu  433 Mar 25 10:09 Dockerfile-final
-rw-rw-r-- 1 ubuntu ubuntu  305 Mar 25 10:09 README.md
drwxrwxr-x 4 ubuntu ubuntu 4096 Mar 25 10:09 cmd
-rw-rw-r-- 1 ubuntu ubuntu 1013 Mar 25 10:09 go.mod
-rw-rw-r-- 1 ubuntu ubuntu 5631 Mar 25 10:09 go.sum
```

Build the image and watch the **build-client** and **build-server** stages execute in parallel. This can significantly improve the performance of large builds.

```
$ docker build -t multi:full .

[+] Building 30.1s (15/15) FINISHED
=> [internal] load build definition from Dockerfile          0.0s
=> => transferring dockerfile: 409B                         0.0s
<Snip>
=> [build-client 1/1] RUN go build -o /bin/client ./cmd/client    4.9s <<---- parallel
=> [build-server 1/1] RUN go build -o /bin/server ./cmd/server    4.8s <<---- parallel
<Snip>
```

Run a **docker images** to see the new image.

```
$ docker images
```

REPO	TAG	IMAGE ID	CREATED	SIZE
multi	full	a7a01440f2b5	5 seconds ago	25.2MB

The final production image is only 25MB, much smaller than the 300MB+ base image pulled by the **base** stage to build and compile the app. This is because the final **prod** stage extracted the compiled client and server binaries and placed them in a tiny new scratch image.

Run a **docker history** to see the final production image. It only has two layers — one created by copying in the client binary and the other by copying in the server binary. None of the previous build stages are included in the final production image.

```
$ docker history multi:full
IMAGE      CREATED      CREATED BY                                     SIZE
a7a01440f2b5  4 minutes ago  ENTRYPOINT ["/bin/server"]           0B
<missing>   4 minutes ago  COPY /bin/server /bin/ # buildkit     8.2MB
<missing>   4 minutes ago  COPY /bin/client /bin/ # buildkit    8.028MB
```

Multi-stage builds and build targets

You can also build multiple images from a single Dockerfile.

The previous example compiled client and server apps and copied both into the same image. However, Docker makes it easy to create a separate image for each by splitting the final **prod** stage into two stages as follows:

```
FROM golang:1.20-alpine AS base
WORKDIR /src
COPY go.mod go.sum .
RUN go mod download
COPY ..

FROM base AS build-client
RUN go build -o /bin/client ./cmd/client

FROM base AS build-server
RUN go build -o /bin/server ./cmd/server

FROM scratch AS prod-client           <----- New stage
COPY --from=build-client /bin/client /bin/
ENTRYPOINT [ "/bin/client" ]

FROM scratch AS prod-server           <----- New stage
COPY --from=build-server /bin/server /bin/
ENTRYPOINT [ "/bin/server" ]
```

I've pre-created the file and called it **Dockerfile-final** in the **multi-stage** folder, but you can see the only change is splitting the final **prod** stage into two stages — one for the client build and the other for the server build. With a Dockerfile like this, you tell a **docker build** command which of the two final stages to target for the build.

Let's do it.

Run the following two commands to create two different images from the same **Dockerfile-final** file. Both commands use the **-f** flag to tell Docker to use the **Dockerfile-final** file. They also use the **--target** flag to tell the builder which stage to build from.

```
$ docker build -t multi:client --target prod-client -f Dockerfile-final .
<Snip>
```

```
$ docker build -t multi:server --target prod-server -f Dockerfile-final .
<Snip>
```

Check the builds and image sizes.

```
$ docker images
REPOSITORY      TAG      IMAGE ID      CREATED      SIZE
multi           full     a7a01440f2b5  4 hours ago   25.2MB
multi           server   a75778df1b9c  4 seconds ago 11.7MB
multi           client   02b621e9415f  37 seconds ago 11.9MB
```

You now have three images, and the **client** and **server** images are each about half the size of the **full** image. This makes sense because the **full** image contains the client and server binaries, whereas the others only include one.

Buildx, BuildKit, drivers, and Build Cloud

This section takes a quick look at the major components that power builds.

Behind the scenes, Docker's build system has a client and server:

- **Client:** Buildx
- **Server:** BuildKit

Buildx is Docker's latest and greatest build client. It's implemented as a CLI plugin and supports all the latest features of BuildKit, such as multi-stage builds, multi-architecture images, advanced caching, and more. It's been the default build client since Docker v23.0 and Docker Desktop v4.19.

You can configure Buildx to talk to multiple BuildKit instances, and we call each instance of BuildKit a *builder*. Builders can be on your local machine, in your cloud or datacenter, or Docker's *Build Cloud*.

If you point buildx at a local builder, image builds will be done on your local machine. If you point it at a remote builder, such as Docker Build Cloud, builds will be done on remote infrastructure.

Figure 8.7 shows a Docker environment configured to talk to a local and a remote builder.

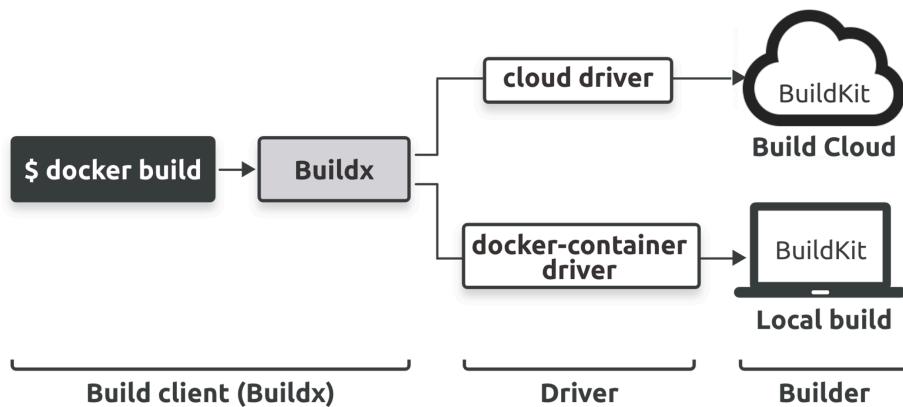


Figure 8.7 - Docker build architecture

In the diagram, the local builder uses the **docker-container** driver to create a BuildKit instance inside a dedicated container. All builds using this driver will run in the dedicated container. The other option uses the cloud driver to send builds to Docker's

Build Cloud service. Build Cloud offers fast builds and a shared cache but requires a paid subscription.

When you run a **docker build** command, buildx interprets the command and sends the build request to the selected *builder*. This includes the Dockerfile, command line arguments, caching options, export options, and the build context (app and dependency list). The *builder* performs the build and exports the image, while the buildx client reports on progress.

Run the following command to see the builders you have configured on your system. I've trimmed the output in the book, but you can see a local and a remote builder.

```
$ docker buildx ls
NAME/NODE          DRIVER/ENDPOINT      PLATFORMS
builder *          docker-container
  builder0        desktop-linux         linux/arm64, linux/amd64, linux/amd64/v2,
                           linux/riscv64, linux/ppc64le, linux/s390x,
                           linux/386, linux/mips64le, linux/mips64,
                           linux/arm/v7, linux/arm/v6
cloud-nigelpoulton-ddd   cloud
  linux-arm64     cloud://nigel...arm64    linux/arm64*
  linux-amd64     cloud://nigel...amd64    linux/amd64*, linux/amd64/v2,
                                             linux/amd64/v3,linux/amd64/v4
<Snip>
```

Notice how the first builder supports more platforms than the cloud builder. This is because the **docker-container** driver utilizes QEMU to emulate target hardware. It usually works but can be slow.

The second builder is Docker's Build Cloud, which only supports AMD and ARM builds. Builds running in Build Cloud run on native hardware and offer a shared cache so that teammates can share a common cache for even faster builds. Complex builds can be much quicker when executed on native hardware such as Build Cloud.

Run a **docker buildx inspect** command against one of your builders.

```
$ docker buildx inspect cloud-nigelpoulton-ddd
Name:      cloud-nigelpoulton-ddd
Driver:    cloud
Nodes:
Name:      linux-arm64
Endpoint:  cloud://nigelpoulton/ddd_linux-arm64
Status:    running
Buildkit:  v0.12.5
Platforms: linux/arm64*
Labels:
org.mobypoint.buildkit.worker.executor:      oci
```

```

org.mobypoint.buildkit.worker.hostname:          2d0e9f41699c
org.mobypoint.buildkit.worker.network:           host
org.mobypoint.buildkit.worker.oci.process-mode:  sandbox
org.mobypoint.buildkit.worker.selinux.enabled:   false
org.mobypoint.buildkit.worker.snapshotter:        overlayfs
GC Policy rule#0:
All:      true
Keep Bytes: 21.42GiB
<Snip>

```

Let's see how to perform multi-architecture builds.

Multi-architecture builds

You can use the **docker build** command to build images for multiple architectures, including ones different from your local machine. For example:

- Docker on an AMD machine can build ARM images
- Docker on an ARM machine can build AMD images

You also have the option to perform build builds locally or in the cloud. Both work with the standard **docker build** command and only require minimal backend configuration.

Run the following command to list your current builders. Remember, a *builder* is an instance of BuildKit that will perform builds.

```

$ docker buildx ls
NAME/NODE              DRIVER/ENDPOINT      PLATFORMS
builder *               docker-container
builder0                desktop-linux         linux/arm64, linux/amd64, linux/amd64/v2,
                           linux/riscv64, linux/ppc64le, linux/s390x,
                           linux/386, linux/mips64le, linux/mips64,
                           linux/arm/v7, linux/arm/v6
cloud-nigelpoulton-ddd  cloud
                        cloud://nigel...arm64  linux/arm64*
                        cloud://nigel...amd64  linux/amd64*, linux/amd64/v2, linux/amd64/v3,
                        cloud://nigel...v4       linux/amd64/v4
<Snip>

```

The book's output shows two builders; the one with the asterisk (*) is the default builder. In this example, the default builder is called **builder** and uses the **docker-container** driver to perform builds inside a local build container. Unless you specify a different builder, all builds will run inside this build container. It supports multiple architectures, including AMD, ARM, RISC-V, s390x, and more.

If you don't already have one, create a new builder called *container* that uses the **docker-container** driver with the following command.

```
$ docker buildx create --driver=docker-container --name=container
builder
```

Run another **docker buildx ls** to show the new builder. Don't worry if it shows as present but inactive.

Make it the default builder.

```
$ docker buildx use container
```

Change into the **web-app** directory and run the following command to build the app into AMD and ARM images and export them directly to Docker Hub.

Be sure to substitute your Docker ID as the command pushes directly to Docker Hub and will fail if you try to push it to my repositories. If you don't have a Docker Hub account or don't want to push the images, you can replace the **--push** with **--load**.

```
$ docker buildx build --builder=container \
--platform=linux/amd64,linux/arm64 \
-t nigelpoulton/ddd-book:ch8.1 --push .

[+] Building 79.3s (26/26) FINISHED
<Snip>
=> [linux/arm64 2/5] RUN apk add --update nodejs npm curl           19.0s
=> [linux/amd64 2/5] RUN apk add --update nodejs npm curl            17.4s
=> [linux/amd64 3/5] COPY . /src                                     0.0s
=> [linux/amd64 4/5] WORKDIR /src                                    0.0s
=> [linux/amd64 5/5] RUN npm install                                7.3s
=> [linux/arm64 3/5] COPY . /src                                    0.0s
=> [linux/arm64 4/5] WORKDIR /src                                    0.0s
=> [linux/arm64 5/5] RUN npm install                                5.6s
=> exporting to image
<Snip>
=> => pushing layers                                              31.5s
=> => pushing manifest for docker.io/nigelpoulton/ddd-book:web0.2@sha256:8fc61...
=> [auth] nigelpoulton/ddd-book:pull, push token for registry-1.docker.io   3.6s
=> [auth] nigelpoulton/ddd-book:push token for registry-1.docker.io          0.0s
```

I've snipped the output, but you can still see two important things:

- Each Dockerfile instruction was executed twice — once for AMD and once for ARM
- The last few lines show the image layers being pushed directly to Docker Hub

Now that you've performed a build, the builder will show as *active* and list the architectures it supports.

Figure 8.8 shows how the images for both architectures appear on Docker Hub under the same repository and tag.

TAG		docker pull nigelpoulton/ddd-book:ch8.1						
Digest	OS/ARCH	Vulnerabilities			Last pull	Compressed Size		
2d3cff6eb2c3	linux/amd64	0	0	2	0	0	---	32.55 MB
f1a56480f7ab	linux/arm64	0	0	2	0	0	---	32.42 MB

Figure 8.8 - Multi-platform image

You can also perform the builds using Docker Build Cloud. This is a cloud-based service that offers fast builds and lets you share your build cache with teammates. It requires a paid subscription.

If you have a Docker subscription that grants you access to Build Cloud, you can go to build.docker.com and configure your first cloud builder. You can also create cloud builders from the CLI as follows. If you're following along, you'll need to give yours a different name.

```
$ docker buildx create --driver cloud nigelpoulton/ddd
cloud-nigelpoulton-ddd
```

Once you have a cloud builder, you can either make it your default builder with a **docker buildx use <builder>** command, or you can specify it when performing individual builds.

The following command uses the **--builder** flag to use the **cloud-nigelpoulton-ddd** cloud builder to build the same images as in the previous steps. Remember to use your own cloud builder if you're following along.

```
$ docker buildx build \
--builder=cloud-nigelpoulton-ddd \
--platform=linux/amd64,linux/arm64 \
-t nigelpoulton/ddd-book:ch8.1 --push .
=> [internal] connected to docker build cloud service          0.0s
<Snip>
```

At the time of writing, Build Cloud supports various AMD and ARM architectures, whereas the **docker-container** driver supports more but is slower and less reliable.

A few good practices

Let's finish the chapter with a few best practices. This isn't a full list, and the advice applies to local and cloud builds.

Leverage the build cache

BuildKit uses a cache to speed up builds. The best way to see the impact is to build a new image on a clean Docker host and then repeat the same build immediately after. The first build will pull images and take time to build layers. The second build will instantly complete because the layers and other artifacts from the first build are cached and leveraged by later builds.

If you use a local builder, the cache is only available to other builds on the same system. However, your entire team can share the cache on Docker Build Cloud.

For each build, the builder iterates through the Dockerfile one line at a time, starting from the top. For each line, it checks if it already has the layer in its cache. If it does, a *cache hit* occurs, and it uses the cached layer. If it doesn't, a *cache miss* occurs, and it builds a new layer from the instruction. Cache hits are one of the best ways to make builds faster.

Let's take a closer look.

Assume the following Dockerfile:

```
FROM alpine
RUN apk add --update nodejs npm
COPY . /src
WORKDIR /src
RUN npm install
EXPOSE 8080
ENTRYPOINT ["node", "./app.js"]
```

The first instruction tells Docker to use the **alpine:latest** image as its *base image*. If you already have a copy of this image, the builder moves on to the next instruction. If you don't have a copy, it pulls it from Docker Hub.

The next instruction (**RUN apk...**) runs a command to update package lists and install **nodejs** and **npm**. Before executing the instruction, Docker checks the build cache for a layer built from the same base image using the same instruction. In this case, it's looking for a layer built by executing the **RUN apk add --update nodejs npm** instruction directly on top of the **alpine:latest** image.

If it finds a matching layer, it links to that layer and continues the build with the cache intact. If it does **not** find a matching layer, it invalidates the cache and builds the layer.

In invalidating the cache means the builder has to execute all remaining Dockerfile instructions in full and cannot use the cache.

Let's assume Docker had a cached layer for the **RUN** instruction and that the layer's ID is **AAA**.

The next instruction runs a **COPY . /src** command to copy the app code into the image. The previous instruction scored a cache hit, meaning Docker can check if it has a cached layer built by running a **COPY . /src** against the **AAA** layer. If it has a cached layer for this, it links to the layer and proceeds to the next instruction. If it doesn't have a cached layer, it builds it and invalidates the cache for the rest of the build.

This process continues for the rest of the Dockerfile.

It's important to understand a few things.

Any time an instruction results in a cache miss, the cache is invalidated and no longer checked for the rest of the build. This means you should write your Dockerfiles so that instructions most likely to invalidate the cache go near the end of the Dockerfile. This allows builds to benefit from the cache for as long as possible.

You can force a build to ignore the cache by running **docker build** with the **--no-cache** option.

It's also important to understand that **COPY** and **ADD** instructions include logic to ensure the *content* you're copying into the image hasn't changed since the last build. For example, you might have a cached layer that Docker built by running a **COPY . /src** against the **AAA** image. However, if the *files* that the **COPY . /src** instruction copies into the layer have changed since the cached layer was built, you cannot use the cached layer as you'd get old versions of the files. To protect against this, Docker performs checksums against each file it copies. If the checksums don't match, the cache is invalidated, and Docker builds a new layer.

Only install essential packages

We often joke that we *install the entire internet* when we build apps. As a quick example, the simple Node.js app used earlier in the chapter depends on two packages:

- Express
- Pug

However, these packages depend on other packages, which in turn depend on others. At the time of writing, building this simple application with two dependencies actually downloads **97 packages!**

Fortunately, some package managers provide a way for you to only download and install essential packages instead of *the entire internet*. One example is the **apt** package manager

that lets you specify the **no-install-recommends** flag so that it only installs packages in the *depends* field and not every *recommended* and *suggested* package. Each package manager does this differently, but it's worth investigating as it can massively impact the size of your images.

Clean up

If you've followed along, you'll have one running container and several images in your local image repository. You should delete the running container and, optionally, the local images.

Run the following command to delete the container.

```
$ docker rm c1 -f
```

Optionally delete the local images with the following command. Be sure to use the names of the images in your environment.

```
$ docker rmi \
  multi:full multi:client multi:server ddd-book:ch8.node nigelpoulton/ddd-book:ch8.node
```

Containerizing an app – The commands

- **docker build** containerizes applications. It reads a Dockerfile and follows the instructions to create an OCI image. The **-t** flag tags the image, and the **-f** flag lets you specify the name and location of the Dockerfile. The *build context* is where your application files exist and can be a directory on your local Docker host or a remote Git repo.
- The Dockerfile **FROM** instruction specifies the base image. It's usually the first instruction in a Dockerfile, and it's considered a good practice to build from *Docker Official Images* or images from *Verified Publishers*. **FROM** is also used to identify new build stages in multi-stage builds.
- The Dockerfile **RUN** instruction lets you run commands during a build. It's commonly used to update packages and install dependencies. Every **RUN** instruction creates a new image layer.
- The Dockerfile **COPY** instruction adds files to images, and you'll regularly use it to copy your application code into a new image. Every **COPY** instruction creates an image layer.
- The Dockerfile **EXPOSE** instruction documents an application's network port.

- The Dockerfile **ENTRYPOINT** and **CMD** instructions tell Docker how to run the app when starting a new container.
- Some other Dockerfile instructions include **LABEL**, **ENV**, **ONBUILD**, **HEALTHCHECK** and more.

Chapter summary

This chapter taught you how to containerize an application. This is the process of building an app into a container image and running it as a container.

You pulled some application source code from GitHub and used the **docker init** command to auto-generate a Dockerfile with instructions telling Docker how to build the app into a container image. You then used **docker build** to create the image, **docker push** to push it to Docker Hub, and **docker run** to run it as a container.

Along the way, you learned that Dockerfile instructions that add content to an image create new layers, whereas instructions that don't add content only add metadata.

After that, you learned how multi-stage builds allow you to create small and efficient production images without the bloat carried over from compiling the app, etc.

After that, you learned that **buildx** is the default build client that integrates with the latest features of the BuildKit build engine. You learned how to create local and remote builders (BuildKit instances) and how to use them to perform multi-architecture builds.

You also learned the importance of the build cache for speeding up builds and how to optimize Dockerfiles to leverage the build cache.

9: Multi-container apps with Compose

In this chapter, you'll deploy and manage a multi-container application using Docker Compose. When we talk about Docker Compose, we usually shorten it to *Compose* and always write it with a capital "C".

I've organized the chapter as follows:

- Docker Compose – The TLDR
- Compose background
- Installing Compose
- The sample app
- Compose files
- Deploying apps with Compose
- Managing apps with Compose

Docker Compose – The TLDR

We create modern cloud-native applications by combining lots of small services that work together to form a useful app. We call them *microservices applications*, and they bring a lot of benefits, such as self-healing, autoscaling, and rolling updates. However, they can be complex.

For example, you might have a microservices app with the following services:

- Web front-end
- Ordering
- Catalog
- Back-end datastore
- Logging
- Authentication
- Authorization

Instead of hacking together complex scripts and long **docker** commands, Compose lets you describe the application in a simple YAML file called a *Compose file*. You then use the Compose file with the **docker compose** command to deploy and manage the app.

You should keep your Compose files in a version control system such as Git.

That's the basics. Let's dig deeper.

Compose background

When Docker was new, a company called *Orchard Labs* built a tool called *Fig* that made deploying and managing multi-container apps easy. It was a Python tool that ran on top of Docker and let you define complex multi-container microservices apps in a simple YAML file. You could even use the **fig** command-line tool to manage the entire application lifecycle.

Behind the scenes, Fig would read the YAML file and call the appropriate Docker commands to deploy and manage the app.

Fig was so good that Docker, Inc. acquired Orchard Labs and rebranded Fig as *Docker Compose*. They renamed the command-line tool from **fig** to **docker-compose**, and then more recently, they folded it into the **docker** CLI with its own **compose** sub-command. You can now run simple **docker compose** commands to easily manage multi-container microservices apps.

There is also a [Compose Specification¹⁵](#) driving Compose as an open standard for defining multi-container microservices apps. The specification is community-led and kept separate from the Docker implementation to maintain better governance and clearer demarcation. However, *Docker Compose* is the *reference implementation*, and you should expect Docker to implement the full spec.

Reading the spec is also a great way to learn the details.

Installing Compose

All modern versions of Docker come with Docker Compose pre-installed, and you no longer need to install it as a separate application.

Test it with the following command. Be sure to use the **docker compose** command instead of the older **docker-compose**.

¹⁵<https://www.compose-spec.io/>

```
$ docker compose version  
Docker Compose version v2.25.0
```

The sample app

We'll use the sample app shown in Figure 9.1 with two services, a network, and a volume.

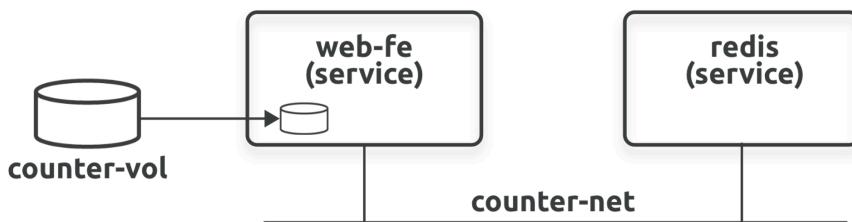


Figure9.1 - Sample app

The **web-fe** service runs a web server that increments a counter in the **redis** service every time it receives a request for the web page. Both services are connected to the **counter-net** network and use it to communicate with each other. The **web-fe** service mounts the **counter-vol** volume.

This is all defined in the **compose.yaml** file in the **multi-container** folder of the book's GitHub repo.

If you haven't already done so, clone the repo so you have a local copy of everything you'll need. You'll need **git** installed, and the command will create a new directory called **ddd-book**.

```
$ git clone https://github.com/nigelpoulton/ddd-book.git  
  
Cloning into 'ddd-book'...  
remote: Enumerating objects: 67, done.  
remote: Counting objects: 100% (67/67), done.  
remote: Compressing objects: 100% (47/47), done.  
remote: Total 67 (delta 17), reused 63 (delta 16), pack-reused 0  
Receiving objects: 100% (67/67), 173.61 KiB | 1.83 MiB/s, done.  
Resolving deltas: 100% (17/17), done.
```

Change into the **ddd-book/multi-container** directory and list its contents.

```
$ cd ddd-book/multi-container/
$ ls -l
total 20
drwxrwxr-x 4 ubuntu ubuntu 4096 May 21 15:53 app
-rw-rw-r-- 1 ubuntu ubuntu 288 May 21 15:53 Dockerfile
-rw-rw-r-- 1 ubuntu ubuntu 18 May 21 15:53 requirements.txt
-rw-rw-r-- 1 ubuntu ubuntu 355 May 21 15:53 compose.yaml
-rw-rw-r-- 1 ubuntu ubuntu 332 May 21 15:53 README.md
```

This directory is your *build context* and contains all the app code and configuration files needed to deploy and manage the app.

- The **app** folder contains the application code, views, and templates
- The **Dockerfile** describes how to build the image for the **web-fe** service
- The **requirements.txt** file lists the application dependencies
- The **compose.yaml** file is the Compose file that describes how the app works

Figure 9.2 is slightly more complex and shows how the files in your build context relate to the app.

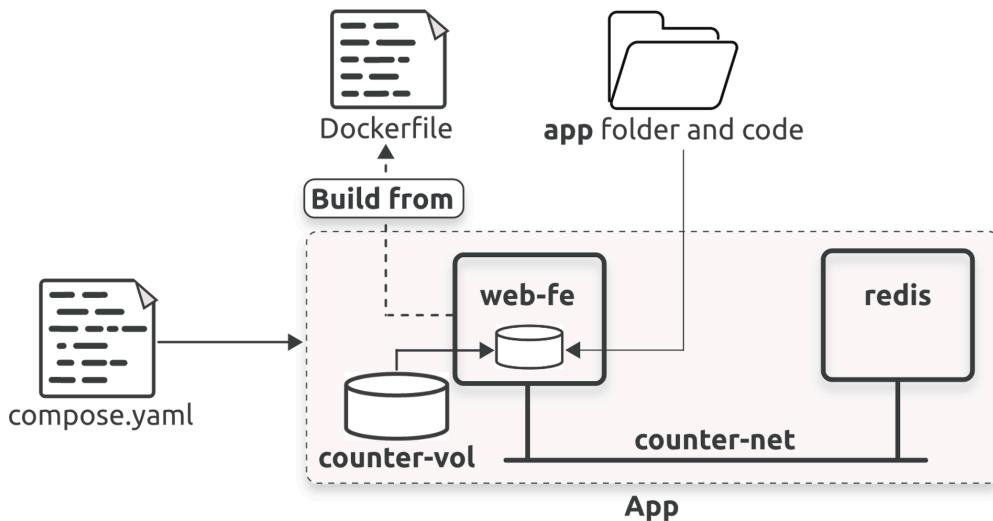


Figure 9.2 - Detailed view of sample app

When you deploy the app, you'll use the **docker compose** command to send the **compose.yaml** file to Docker. Docker will create the **counter-net** network and the **counter-vol** volume and use the Dockerfile to build an OCI image for the **web-fe** service. The Dockerfile tells Docker to copy the code from the **app** folder into the image.

Docker then starts the **web-fe**, mounts the **counter-vol** volume, and connects to the **counter-net** network. It also starts a container for the **redis** service and connects that to the same **counter-net** network.

Docker also uses the name of the build context directory to name the services, network, and volume so that you can easily identify them.

Now that you know what the app looks like, let's look at the Compose file.

Compose files

Compose uses YAML files to define microservices applications. We call them *Compose files*, and Compose expects you to name them **compose.yaml** or **compose.yml**. However, you can use the **-f** flag with the **docker compose** command to specify files with arbitrary names.

Here is the Compose file we'll be using. It's called **compose.yaml** and is in the **multi-container** folder.

```
services:          <----- Microservices are defined in the "services" block
  web-fe:           <----- This block defines the web front-end microservice
    deploy:
      replicas: 1
    build: .
    command: python app.py
    ports:
      - target: 8080
        published: 5001
    networks:
      - counter-net
    volumes:
      - type: volume
        source: counter-vol
        target: /app
  redis:            <----- This block defines the Redis back-end microservice
    deploy:
      replicas: 1
    image: "redis:alpine"
    networks:
      counter-net:
networks:          <----- Networks are defined in this block
  counter-net:
volumes:           <----- Volumes are defined in this block
  counter-vol:
```

The first thing to note is that the file has three top-level keys with a block of code beneath each:

- services
- networks
- volumes

More top-level keys exist, but this app only uses the three in the list.

Let's have a closer look at each.

The top-level **services** key is mandatory and is where you define application microservices. This app has two microservices called **web-fe** and **redis**.

Let's look at both, starting with the **web-fe** service.

```
services:  
  web-fe:          <---- Service name. Containers will inherit this name  
    deploy:  
      replicas: 1    <---- Deploy a single container for this service  
      build: .        <---- Build from the Dockerfile in the same directory  
      command: python app.py <---- Execute this command when starting containers  
      ports:  
        - target: 8080 <---- Map port 8080 in the container...  
          published: 5001 <---- ...to port 5001 on the Docker host  
    networks:  
      - counter-net   <---- Attach containers to the "counter-net" network  
    volumes:  
      - type: volume  
        source: counter-vol <---- Mount the "counter-vol" volume...  
        target: /app       <---- ...to "/app" in the containers for this service
```

Let's step through it.

- **web-fe:** is the service's name, and all containers created as part of this service will have “web-fe” in their names.
- **deploy.replicas: 1** tells Docker to deploy a single container for this service. You can specify a different number of replicas to deploy multiple identical containers for the service. However, this won't work on Docker Desktop installations as you only have a single Docker host, and only one container can use port 5001 on the Docker Desktop host. You'll learn how to deploy multiple replicas for this service in the **Deploying apps with Docker stacks** chapter.
- **build: .** tells Docker to build the image for this service's container from the Dockerfile in the current directory.
- **command: python app.py** is the command Docker will execute inside every container it creates for this service. The **app.py** file must exist in the image, and the image must have Python installed. The Dockerfile takes care of both of these requirements.

- **ports:** is where you map network ports from the service's containers to the Docker host. This example maps port 5001 on the Docker host to port 8080 inside the container.
- **networks:** tells Docker to attach this service's containers to the **counter-net** network. The network should already exist or be defined in the **networks** top-level key.
- **volumes:** tells Docker to mount the **counter-vol** volume to the **/app** directory inside all of the service's containers. The volume should already exist or be defined in the **volumes** top-level key.

In summary, Compose will instruct Docker to deploy a single container for the **web-fe** service. It will build a new image from the Dockerfile in the same directory and start the container from that image. When it starts, the container will have **web-fe** in its name and run the **python app.py** command. It will attach to the **counter-net** network, expose the web service on the host's port 5001, and mount the **counter-vol** volume to **/app**. If you defined multiple replicas (containers) they would all be identical.

Note: You don't need to specify the **command: python app.py** option in the Compose file as it's already defined in the Dockerfile. However, I've shown it here so you know how it works. You can also use Compose to override instructions set in Dockerfiles.

The **redis** service is a lot simpler.

```
services:  
..  
redis:           <<<---- Service name. Containers will inherit this name  
  deploy:  
    replicas: 1      <<<---- Deploy a single container for this service  
  image: "redis:alpine" <<<---- Pull the "redis:alpine" image for this service  
  networks:  
    counter-net:     <<<---- Attach containers to the "counter-net" network
```

Let's step through this one.

- **redis:** is the service's name, and all containers created as part of this service will inherit "redis" as part of their names.
- **deploy.replicas: 1** tells Docker to deploy a single container for this service.
- **image: redis:alpine** tells Docker to pull the **redis:alpine** image from Docker Hub and use it to start the service's containers.
- **networks:** tells Docker to attach the service's containers to the **counter-net** network.

Connecting both services to the **counter-net** network means they can resolve each other by name and communicate. This is important, as the following extract from the **app.py** file shows the web app communicating with the **redis** service by name.

```
import time
import redis
from flask import Flask, render_template
app = Flask(__name__)
cache = redis.Redis(host='redis', port=6379)    <<---- "redis" is the name of the service
<Snip>
```

The **network** and **volumes** blocks are extremely simple and define a network called **counter-net** and a volume called **counter-vol**.

```
networks:                      <<---- This block defines a new network called "counter-net"
  counter-net:
volumes:                        <<---- This block defines a new volume called "counter-vol"
  counter-vol:
```

Now that we understand how the Compose file works let's deploy the app.

Deploying apps with Compose

In this section, you'll use the Compose file to deploy the app. You'll need a local copy of the book's GitHub repo, and you'll need to run all commands from the **multi-container** folder.

Run the following command to deploy the app. By default, it deploys the app defined in the **compose.yaml** file in the working directory.

```
$ docker compose up &

- redis 7 layers [|||||]          0B/0B     Pulled      5.2s
  - b0dd12c8e070: Pull complete
  <Snip>
  - 4f4fb700ef54: Pull complete
  - redis Pulled
<Snip>
=> [web-fe internal] load build definition from Dockerfile
[+] Building 10.3s (9/9) FINISHED
<Snip>
[+] Running 4/4
- Network multi-container_counter-net      Created      0.0s
- Volume "multi-container_counter-vol"    Created      0.0s
- Container multi-container-redis-1       Created      0.1s
- Container multi-container-web-fe-1       Created      0.1s
```

It'll take a few seconds to build and pull the images and then start the app. Once it's running, you'll have to hit **Return** to reclaim your shell prompt.

We'll review what happened in a second, but let's talk about the **docker compose** command first.

Running a **docker compose up** command is the most common way to deploy a Compose app. It reads through the Compose file in the local directory and runs the Docker commands required to deploy the app. This includes building and pulling all the necessary images, creating all required networks and volumes, and starting all containers.

The command you executed didn't specify the name or location of the Compose file, so Docker assumed it was called **compose.yaml** in the local directory. However, you can use the **-f** flag to point to a Compose file with a different name in a different directory. For example, the following command will deploy the application defined in a Compose file called **sample-app.yml** in the **apps/ddd-book** directory.

```
$ docker compose -f apps/ddd-book/sample-app.yml up &
```

You'll normally use the **--detach** flag to bring the app up in the background, and we'll see that later. However, bringing it up in the foreground as we did will print informative messages to your terminal that we'll refer to later.

Now that you've deployed the app, you can run regular **docker** commands to see the images, containers, networks, and volumes that Compose created — remember, Compose is building and working with regular Docker constructs behind the scenes.

Run the following command to see the image *created* for the **web-fe** service and the image *pulled* for the **redis** service.

```
$ docker images
REPOSITORY          TAG      IMAGE ID      CREATED       SIZE
redis              alpine   7635b0bfdd7d  2 months ago  61.4MB
multi-container-web-fe  latest   f8fc9490e335  24 minutes ago  113MB
```

Docker pulled the **redis:alpine** image from Docker Hub, but it used the Dockerfile to build the **multi-container-web-fe:latest** image.

If you look at the Dockerfile, you'll see it pulls the **python:alpine** image, copies in the app code, installs requirements, and sets the command to start the app.

```

FROM python:alpine           <===== Base image
COPY . /app                  <===== Copy app code into image
WORKDIR /app                 <===== Set working directory
RUN pip install -r requirements.txt <===== Install requirements
ENTRYPOINT ["python", "app.py"] <===== Set the default app

```

Notice how the newly built image's name is a combination of the project name and the service name. The project name is the name of the build context directory, which in our example is **multi-container**, and the service name is **web-fe**. Compose uses this format to name all resources, and the following table shows the names it will give the resources for our sample app.

Resource type	Resource	Name
Service	web-fe	multi-container-web-fe-1
Service	redis	multi-container-redis-1
Network	counter-net	multi-container_counter-net
Volume	counter-vol	multi-container_counter-vol

List running containers to see the containers Compose created for the app.

```
$ docker ps
ID      COMMAND          STATUS        PORTS          NAMES
61..   "python app/app.py"    Up 35 mins   0.0.0.0:5001->8080/tcp..  multi-container-web-fe-1
80..   "docker-entrypoint.." Up 35 mins   6379/tcp       multi-container-redis-1
```

As you can see, the **multi-container-web-fe-1** container is running the Python web app and is mapped to port 5001 on all interfaces on the Docker host. We'll connect to this later.

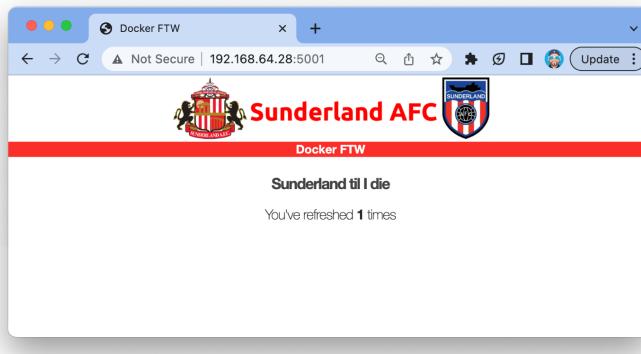
The number at the end of the container names allows each service to have multiple replicas. For example, if the **web-fe** service had three replicas they would be called **multi-container-web-fe-1**, **multi-container-web-fe-2**, and **multi-container-web-fe-3**.

Run the following commands to see the **counter-net** network and **counter-vol** volume.

```
$ docker network ls
NETWORK ID      NAME                DRIVER      SCOPE
46100cae7441    multi-container_counter-net    bridge      local
<Snip>

$ docker volume ls
DRIVER      VOLUME NAME
local      multi-container_counter-vol
<Snip>
```

With the application deployed, you can point a web browser at your Docker host on port 5001 to view it. You can connect to `localhost:5001` if you're running Docker Desktop.



Refreshing the page will cause the counter to increment. This is because the app counts page hits and stores the counter in the Redis service.

If you followed along and brought the application up in the foreground, you'll see HTTP response codes in your terminal for every page refresh. You won't see this if you used the `--detach` flag to bring it up in the background.

```
web-fe-1  | 192.168.65.1 - [31/Mar/2024 19:15:33] "GET / HTTP/1.1" 200 -
web-fe-1  | 192.168.65.1 - [31/Mar/2024 19:15:33] "GET /static/images/image.png HTTP/1.1" 304
web-fe-1  | 192.168.65.1 - [31/Mar/2024 19:15:33] "GET /static/css/main.css HTTP/1.1" 304
```

Congratulations. You've successfully deployed a multi-container application using Docker Compose!

Managing apps with Compose

In this section, you'll see how to stop, restart, delete, and get the status of Compose apps.

Run the following command to shut down the app. If you started it in the foreground, you'll see messages requesting the app to gracefully quit.

```
$ docker compose down

redis-1  | 1:signal-handler (1711912860) Received SIGTERM scheduling shutdown...
redis-1  | 1:M 31 Mar 2024 19:21:00.406 * User requested shutdown...
redis-1  | 1:M 31 Mar 2024 19:21:00.406 * Saving the final RDB snapshot before exiting.
redis-1  | 1:M 31 Mar 2024 19:21:00.409 * DB saved on disk
redis-1  | 1:M 31 Mar 2024 19:21:00.409 # Redis is now ready to exit, bye bye...
<Snip>
- Container multi-container-redis-1    Removed          0.1s
- Container multi-container-web-fe-1   Removed          0.2s
- Container multi-container-redis-1    Removed          0.1s
- Network multi-container_net        Removed          0.1s
```

The output shows Docker removing both containers and the network. However, it doesn't mention the volume.

Run a **docker volumes ls** command to see if the volume still exists.

```
$ docker volume ls

<Snip>
local      multi-container_counter-vol
```

The volume still exists, including the counter data stored in it. This is because Docker knows that we store important information in volumes and might not want to delete them with other application resources. With this in mind, Docker decouples the lifecycle of volumes from the rest of the application.

Docker also keeps the images it built and pulled when it started the app. This makes future deployments faster.

Feel free to run a **docker images** command to verify the images still exist.

Let's explore a few other **docker compose** sub-commands.

Run the following command to redeploy the app.

```
$ docker compose up --detach
<Snip>
[+] Running 2/3
- Network multi-container_counter-net  Created          0.2s
- Container multi-container-redis-1    Started         0.2s
- Container multi-container-web-fe-1   Started         0.2s
```

Notice how it started much faster this time. This is because the volume and both images already exist.

Check the current state of the app with the **docker compose ps** command.

```
$ docker compose ps
NAME                  COMMAND             SERVICE      STATUS      PORTS
multi-container-redis-1 "docker-entrypoint.."    redis        Up 33 sec   6379/tcp
multi-container-web-fe-1 "python app/app.py"     web-fe       Up 33 sec   0.0.0.0:5001->8080
```

The output shows both containers, the commands they're executing, their current state, and the network ports they're listening on.

Run a **docker compose top** to list the processes inside each container.

```
$ docker compose top
multi-container-redis-1
UID      PID      PPID      ... CMD
lxd      12023    11980    redis-server *:6379

multi-container-web-fe-1
UID      PID      PPID      ... CMD
root    12024    12002    0  python app/app.py python app.py
root    12085    12024    0  /usr/local/bin/python app/app.py python app.py
```

The PID numbers returned are the PID numbers as seen from the Docker host (not from within the containers).

You're about to stop and restart the app. However, before doing this, connect your browser to the app again and refresh the page a few times. Make a note of the counter value before continuing.

Run the following commands to stop the app and recheck its status.

```
$ docker compose stop
[+] Running 2/2
- Container multi-container-redis-1 Stopped          0.4s
- Container multi-container-web-fe-1 Stopped          0.5

$ docker compose ps
NAME      COMMAND      SERVICE      STATUS      PORTS
```

The app is down, but Docker hasn't deleted any of its resources. Verify this by checking if the containers still exist.

```
$ docker compose ps -a
NAME                  IMAGE             ...      SERVICE      STATUS
multi-container-redis-1  redis:alpine     ...      redis      Exited (0) 18 seconds ago
multi-container-web-fe-1  multi-container-web-fe  ...      web-fe     Exited (0) 18 seconds ago
```

Both containers still exist in the **Exited** state.

Restart the app with the **docker compose restart** command.

```
$ docker compose restart
[+] Running 2/2
- Container multi-container-redis-1    Started          0.4s
- Container multi-container-web-fe-1   Started          0.5s
```

Verify the operation worked.

```
$ docker compose ls
NAME      STATUS     CONFIG FILES
multi-container  running(2)  /Users/nigelpoulton/temp/ddd-book/multi-container/compose.yaml
```

Go back to your browser and refresh the page again. Notice how the counter picks up from where you left it. This is because the Redis container persisted the count value across the stop and restart operations.

Congratulations. You've deployed and managed a multi-container microservices app using Docker Compose.

Before cleaning up and reviewing the commands, it's important to understand that this was a simple example and that Docker Compose can deploy and manage far more complex applications.

Clean up

Run the following command to **stop and delete** the app. The **--volumes** flag will delete all of the app's volumes, and the **--rmi all** will delete all of its images.

```
$ docker-compose down --volumes --rmi all
- Container multi-container-web-fe-1    Removed        0.2s
- Container multi-container-redis-1    Removed        0.1s
- Volume multi-container_counter-vol  Removed        0.0s
- Image multi-container-web-fe:latest  Removed        0.1s
- Image redis:alpine                 Removed        0.1s
- Network multi-container_counter-net Removed        0.1s
```

Deploying apps with Compose – The commands

- **docker compose up** is the command to deploy a Compose app. It creates all images, containers, networks, and volumes the app needs. It expects you to call the Compose file **compose.yaml**, but you can specify a custom filename with the **-f** flag. You'll normally start the app in the background with the **--detach** flag.

- **docker compose stop** will stop all containers in a Compose app without deleting them from the system. You can easily restart them with **docker compose restart**, and you shouldn't lose any data.
- **docker compose restart** will restart a stopped Compose app. If you make changes to the Compose file while it's stopped, these changes will **not** appear in the restarted app. You need to redeploy the app to see any changes you made in the Compose file.
- **docker compose ps** lists each container in the Compose app. It shows the current state, the command each container is running, and network ports.
- **docker compose down** will stop and delete a running Compose app. By default, it deletes containers and networks but not volumes and images.

Chapter Summary

In this chapter, you learned how to deploy and manage multi-container applications using Docker Compose.

Compose is now fully integrated into the Docker Engine and has its own **docker compose** sub-command. It lets you define multi-container applications in declarative configuration files and deploy them with a single command.

Compose files define all the containers, networks, volumes, secrets, and other configurations an application needs. You then use the **docker compose** command to post the Compose file to Docker, and Docker deploys it.

Once you've deployed the app, you can manage its entire lifecycle using **docker compose** sub-commands.

Docker Compose is popular with developers, and the Compose file is an excellent source of application documentation — it defines all the services that make up the app, the images they use, the ports they expose, the networks and volumes they use, and much more. As such, it can help bridge the gap between development and operations teams. You should also treat Compose files as code and store them in version control systems.

10: Docker Swarm

Now that you know how to install Docker, pull images, and work with containers, the next logical step is to do it all at scale. That's where Docker Swarm comes into play.

I've split the chapter into the following main parts:

- Docker Swarm – The TLDR
- Swarm primer
- Build a secure Swarm cluster
- Deploy and manage an app on swarm
- Service logs
- The commands

Docker Swarm – The TLDR

Docker Swarm is two things:

1. An enterprise-grade cluster of Docker nodes
2. An orchestrator of microservices apps

On the *clustering* front, Swarm groups one or more Docker nodes into a cluster. Out of the box, you get an encrypted distributed cluster store, encrypted networks, mutual TLS, secure cluster join tokens, and a PKI that makes managing and rotating certificates a breeze. You can even add and remove nodes non-disruptively. We call these clusters “*swarms*”.

On the *orchestration* front, Swarm makes deploying and managing complex microservices apps easy. You define applications declaratively in Compose files and use simple Docker commands to deploy them to the *swarm*. You can even perform rolling updates, rollbacks, and scaling operations.

Docker Swarm is similar to Kubernetes — both are clusters that run and manage containerized applications. Kubernetes is more popular and has a more active community and ecosystem. However, Swarm is easier to use and is a popular choice for small-to-medium businesses and smaller application deployments. Learning Swarm also prepares you to learn and work with Kubernetes. In fact, if you plan on learning Kubernetes, you should check out my books, *Quick Start Kubernetes* and *The Kubernetes Book*.

Swarm primer

On the clustering front, a *swarm* is one or more Docker nodes that can be physical servers, VMs, cloud instances, Raspberry Pi's, and more. The only requirement is that they all run Docker and can communicate over reliable networks.

Terminology: When referring to the *Docker Swarm* technology, we'll write *Swarm* with an uppercase "S". When referring to a swarm as a cluster of nodes, we'll use a lowercase "s".

Every node in a swarm is either a *manager* or a *worker*:

- Managers run the *control plane* services that maintain the state of the cluster and schedule user applications to workers
- Workers run user applications

Swarm runs user applications on managers **and** workers in a default installation. However, you can force user applications to run on worker nodes on important clusters, allowing your managers to focus on cluster management operations.

The swarm stores its state and configuration in an in-memory distributed database that replicates across all manager nodes. Fortunately, it's automatically configured when you create the swarm and takes care of itself.

Swarm uses TLS to encrypt communications, authenticate nodes, and authorize roles (managers and workers). It also configures and performs automatic key rotation. And as with the cluster store, it's automatically configured when you create the swarm and takes care of itself.

Figure 10.1 shows a high-level view of a swarm with three managers, three workers, and a distributed cluster store replicated across all three managers.

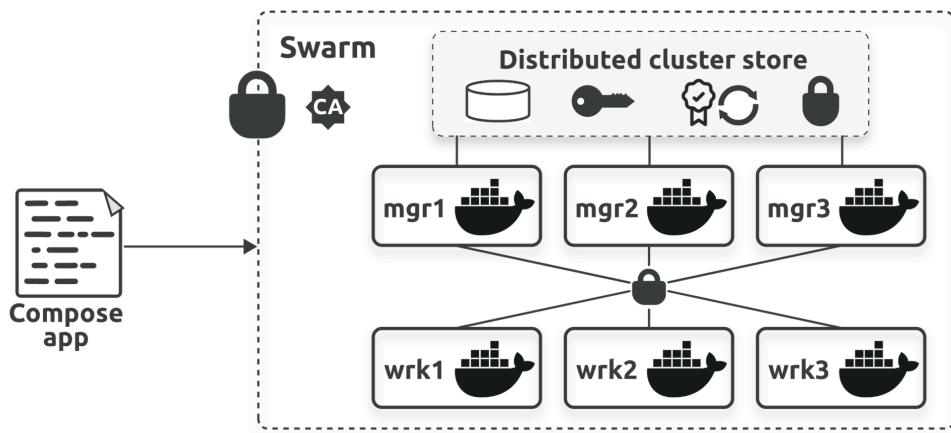


Figure 10.1 High-level swarm

On the orchestration front, Swarm makes it easy to deploy and manage containerized applications. It balances workloads across the cluster and adds cloud-native capabilities such as self-healing, scaling, rollouts, and rollbacks.

That's enough of a primer. Let's build a swarm.

Build a secure swarm cluster

In this section, you'll build a secure swarm cluster. I'll build the cluster shown in Figure 10.2 with three *managers* and two *workers*. You can build a different cluster, but the following rules usually apply:

- Three or five managers are recommended for high-availability
- Enough workers to handle your application requirements

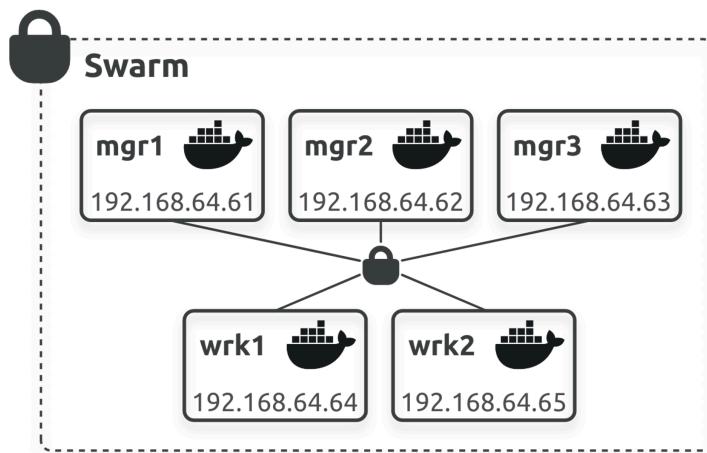


Figure 10.2 - Sample lab environment

Pre-reqs

If you're following along, I recommend using Multipass to create five Docker VMs on your laptop or local machine. Multipass is free and easy to use, and I'll use it for the examples.

However, running five Multipass VMs requires a lot of system resources as each VM needs 2 CPUs, 40GB of disk space, and 4GB of memory. If your system can't handle this, you can create fewer managers and workers or build your lab in [Play with Docker](#)¹⁶. Play with Docker (PWD) is a free cloud-based service that lets you create up to five nodes in a 4-hour Docker playground. Other Docker environments will also work. All you need is one or more Docker nodes that can communicate over a reliable network. You'll also find it easier if you configure name resolution so you can reference nodes by name rather than IP address.

I don't recommend following along on Docker Desktop as it only supports a single node, which isn't enough for some of the examples later in the book.

Build your Docker nodes

This section uses Multipass to build the swarm in Figure 10.2.

Search the web for *install multipass* and follow the instructions to install it on your system.

¹⁶<https://labs.play-with-docker.com/>

Run the following five **multipass launch** commands to create five VMs running Docker. We'll refer to each VM as a *node*, and each will require 2 CPUs, 40GB of disk space, and 4GB of RAM. If your machine doesn't have those resources, go to Play with Docker and build your lab there.

Name three of the nodes as **mgr1**, **mgr2**, and **mgr3**, and name the other two **wrk1** and **wrk2**. Yours will get different IPs, but that doesn't matter. It can take a minute or two to create each VM.

```
$ multipass launch docker --name mgr1
```

Launched: mgr1

```
$ multipass launch docker --name mgr2
```

Launched: mgr2

```
$ multipass launch docker --name mgr3
```

Launched: mgr3

```
$ multipass launch docker --name wrk1
```

Launched: wrk1

```
$ multipass launch docker --name wrk2
```

Launched: wrk2

Run the following command and note the node IP addresses. Yours will have different addresses, and you're only interested in the **192.168.x.x** address for each.

```
$ multipass ls
```

Name	State	IPv4	Image
mgr1	Running	192.168.64.61 172.17.0.1	Ubuntu 22.04 LTS
mgr2	Running	192.168.64.62 172.17.0.1	Ubuntu 22.04 LTS
mgr3	Running	192.168.64.63 172.17.0.1	Ubuntu 22.04 LTS
wrk1	Running	192.168.64.64 172.17.0.1	Ubuntu 22.04 LTS
wrk2	Running	192.168.64.65 172.17.0.1	Ubuntu 22.04 LTS

Once you've built the nodes, you can log on to them with the **multipass shell** command, and you can log out by typing **exit**.

Log on to one of the nodes and check that Docker is installed and running.

```
$ multipass shell mgr1  
$ docker --version  
Docker version 26.1.1, build 2ae903e
```

Type **exit** to log out of the node and return to your local shell.

Once you've confirmed your nodes are working, you can move to the next section and build a swarm.

Initializing a new swarm

The process of building a swarm is called *initializing a swarm*, and this is the high-level process:

1. Initialize the first manager
2. Join additional managers
3. Join workers.

Before a Docker node joins a swarm, it runs in *single-engine mode* and can only run regular containers. After joining a swarm, it switches into *swarm mode* and can run advanced containers called *swarm services*. More on *services* later.

When you run a **docker swarm init** command on a Docker node that's currently in *single-engine mode*, Docker switches it into *swarm mode*, creates a new *swarm*, and makes the node the first *manager* of the swarm. You can then add more nodes as managers and workers, and these nodes also get switched into swarm mode.

You're about to complete all of the following:

1. Initialize a new swarm from **mgr1**
2. Join **wrk1** and **wrk2** as worker nodes
3. Join **mgr2** and **mgr3** as additional managers

After completing the procedure, all five nodes will be in swarm mode and part of the same swarm.

The examples will use the names and IPs from Figure 10.2. Yours will be different, and you should use your own.

1. Log on to **mgr1** and initialize a new swarm. Be sure to use the private IP address of *your mgr1* node.

```
$ docker swarm init \
--advertise-addr 192.168.64.61:2377 \
--listen-addr 192.168.64.61:2377

Swarm initialized: current node (d21lyz...c79qzkx) is now a manager.
<Snip>
```

Let's step through the different parts of the command:

- **docker swarm init** tells Docker to initialize a new swarm with this node as the first manager.
- The **--advertise-addr** flag is optional and tells Docker which of the node's IP addresses to advertise as the swarm API endpoint. It's usually one of the node's IP addresses but can also be an external load balancer.
- The **--listen-addr** flag tells Docker which of the node's interfaces to accept swarm traffic on. It defaults to the same value as **--advertise-addr** if you don't specify it. However, if **--advertise-addr** is a load balancer, you must use **--listen-addr** to specify a local IP.

I recommend specifying both flags in important production environments. However, for most lab environments, you can just run a **docker swarm init** without any flags.

You can also specify a different port for the advertise and listen addresses, but using the default 2377 is common.

2. List the nodes in the swarm.

```
$ docker node ls
ID           HOSTNAME   STATUS  AVAILABILITY  MANAGER STATUS
d21...qzkx *  mgr1      Ready   Active        Leader
```

mgr1 is the only node in the swarm and is listed as the *Leader*. We'll talk about leaders later.

3. Run the following command from **mgr1** to see the commands and tokens needed to add new workers and managers.

```
$ docker swarm join-token worker
To add a manager to this swarm, run the following command:
  docker swarm join --token SWMTKN-1-0uahebax...c87tu8dx2c 192.168.64.61:2377

$ docker swarm join-token manager
To add a manager to this swarm, run the following command:
  docker swarm join --token SWMTKN-1-0uahebax...ue4hv6ps3p 192.168.64.61:2377
```

Notice how the commands are identical except for the join tokens (**SWMTKN...**). You should keep your join tokens in a safe place, as they're all that's required to join other nodes to your swarm!

4. Log on to **wrk1** and use the correct command and token to join it as a worker node. I've added the optional **advertise-addr** and **listen-addr** flags in the example so you know how to use them. You can leave them off, but if you do use them, be sure to use the correct IPs for your environment.

```
$ docker swarm join \
--token SWMTKN-1-0uahebax...c87tu8dx2c \
10.0.0.1:2377 \
--advertise-addr 192.168.64.64:2377 \
--listen-addr 192.168.64.64:2377
```

This node joined a swarm as a worker.

If you experience joining problems, make sure the following network ports are open between all nodes:

- 2377/tcp: for secure client-to-swarm communication
- 7946/tcp and udp: for control plane gossip
- 4789/udp: for VXLAN-based overlay networks

5. Repeat the previous step on **wrk2** so that you have two workers. If you specify the **--advertise-addr** and **--listen-addr** flags, make sure you use **wrk2**'s IP addresses.
6. Log on to **mgr2** and **mgr3** and join them as managers using the *manager token* from step 3. Again, you don't have to use the **--advertise-addr** and **--listen-addr** flags, but if you do, be sure to use the correct IPs for your environment.

```
$ docker swarm join \
--token SWMTKN-1-0uahebax...ue4hv6ps3p \
10.0.0.1:2377 \
--advertise-addr 192.168.64.62:2377 \
--listen-addr 192.168.64.62:2377
```

This node joined a swarm as a manager.

7. List the nodes in your swarm by running **docker node ls** from any of the manager nodes.

ID	HOSTNAME	STATUS	AVAILABILITY	MANAGER STATUS	ENGINE VERSION
0g4rl...babl8 *	mgr2	Ready	Active	Reachable	26.1.1
2xlti...l0nyp	mgr3	Ready	Active	Reachable	26.1.1
d21ly...9qzqx	mgr1	Ready	Active	Leader	26.1.1
8yv0b...wmr67	wrk1	Ready	Active		26.1.1
e62gf...l5wt6	wrk2	Ready	Active		26.1.1

If you look closely at the **MANAGER STATUS** column, you'll see all three managers are showing as either *Reachable* or *Leader*. The nodes with nothing in this column are worker nodes. The manager with the asterisk after its name is the one you're executing commands from.

Congratulations. You've created a five-node swarm with three managers and two workers. The Docker Engine on each node is now operating in swarm mode, and the swarm is secured with TLS.

Swarm manager high availability

Swarm clusters are highly available (HA), meaning one or more managers can fail, and the swarm will keep running.

Technically speaking, Swarm implements *active/passive multi-manager HA*. This means a swarm with three managers will have one active manager, and the other two will be passive. In a swarm, we call the active manager the *leader* and the passive managers *followers*, and the leader is the only manager that can update the swarm configuration. If the leader fails, one of the followers will be elected as the new leader and the swarm will keep running without any service interruption. If you send commands to a follower, it proxies them to the leader.

Figure 10.3 shows you issuing a command to a follower manager requesting an update to the swarm. Step 1 shows you issuing the command. Step 2 shows the follower manager receiving and proxying the command to the leader. Step 3 shows the leader executing it.

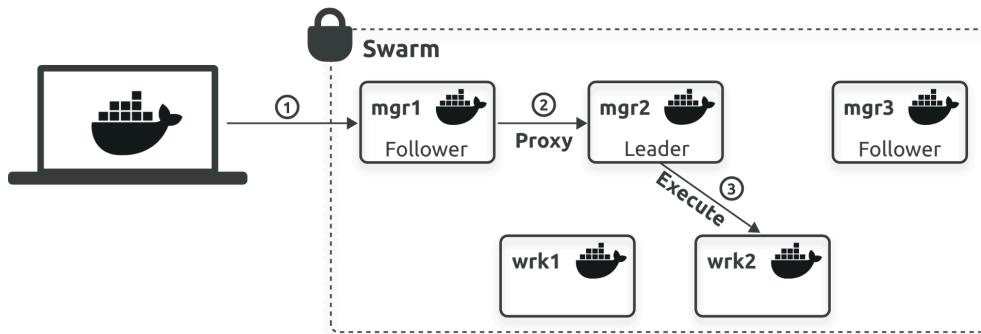


Figure 10.3

Leader and *follower* is *Raft* terminology, and we use it because Swarm implements the *Raft consensus algorithm*¹⁷ to maintain a consistent cluster state across multiple highly-available managers.

¹⁷<https://raft.github.io/>

The following good practices apply when it comes to manager HA:

1. Always deploy an odd number of managers
2. Don't deploy too many managers (3 or 5 is usually enough)
3. Spread managers across availability zones

Consider the two examples shown in Figure 10.4. The swarm on the left has an even number of managers, and a network incident has created a network partition with two managers on either side. We call this a *split brain* because neither side can be sure it has a majority, and the cluster goes into read-only mode. When this happens, your apps continue working but you can't make changes to them or to the cluster. However, the swarm on the right has an **odd number of managers** and remains fully operational in read-write mode because the two managers on the right side of the network partition know they have a majority (quorum). So, even though the swarm on the right has fewer managers than the one on the left, it has better availability.

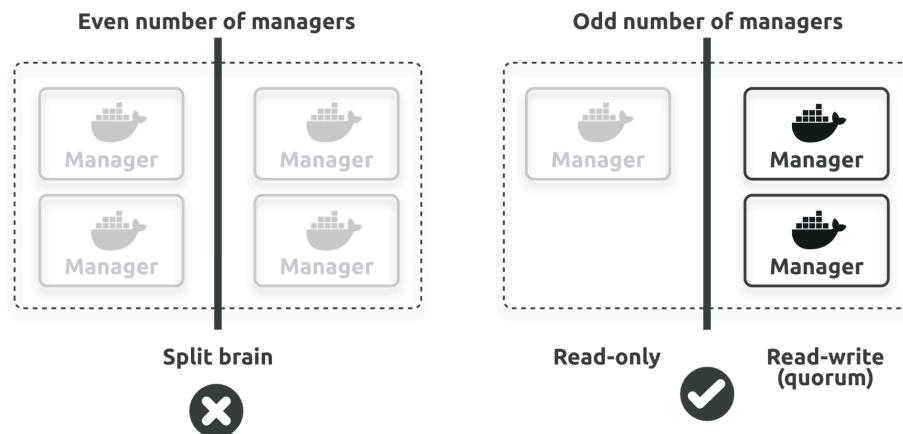


Figure 10.4 - Swarm high availability

As with all consensus algorithms, more participants means longer times to achieve consensus. It's like choosing where to eat — it's always quicker and easier for three people to decide than it is for 33! With this in mind, it's usually a best practice to have three or five managers for HA. Seven might work, but three or five is usually right for most swarms.

A final word of caution regarding manager HA. While you should definitely spread your managers across availability zones, they need to be connected by fast and reliable networks. This means you should think carefully and do lots of testing before implementing multi-cloud clusters implementing multi-cloud HA.

Built-in Swarm security

Swarm ships with a lot of security features, such as a built-in certificate authority (CA), mutual TLS, an encrypted cluster store, encrypted networks, cryptographic node IDs and join tokens, and more. Fortunately, Swarm automatically configures them with sensible defaults.

Locking a Swarm

Despite all of Swarm's security features, restarting an old manager or restoring an old backup can potentially compromise your cluster. For example, a malicious actor with access to an old manager node may be able to re-join it to the swarm and gain unwanted access.

Fortunately, you can use Swarm's *autolock* feature to force restarted managers to present a key before being admitted back into the swarm.

You can autolock new swarms at build time by passing the **--autolock** flag to the **docker swarm init** command. For existing swarms, you can autolock them with the **docker swarm update** command.

Run the following command from one of your swarm managers to lock your existing swarm cluster.

```
$ docker swarm update --autolock=true
Swarm updated.

To unlock a swarm manager after it restarts, run the `docker swarm unlock` command and provide the following key:
```

```
SWMKEY-1-XDeU3XC75Ku7rvGXixJ0V7evhDJGvIAVq0D8VuEAЕaw
```

Please remember to store this key in a password manager...

While it's possible to run a **docker swarm unlock-key** command on any manager to view your unlock key, you should also keep a secure copy outside of your cluster in case you're ever locked out of your swarm.

Restart Docker on one of your managers to see if it automatically re-joins the cluster.

```
$ sudo systemctl restart docker
```

Try to list the nodes in the swarm.

```
$ docker node ls
Error response from daemon: Swarm is encrypted and needs to be unlocked before it can be used.
```

Docker has restarted, but the manager hasn't been allowed to re-join the swarm. You can prove this by running a **docker node ls** from one of your other managers and the restarted manager will be listed as **down** and **unreachable**.

Run the **docker swarm unlock** command to unlock the swarm for the restarted manager and provide the unlock key.

```
$ docker swarm unlock
Please enter unlock key: <enter your key>
```

Docker will re-admit the node to the swarm, and it will show as **ready** and **reachable** in future commands.

You should lock your production swarms and protect the unlock keys.

Dedicated manager nodes

By default, Swarm runs user applications on workers **and** managers. However, you may want to configure your production swarm clusters to only run user applications on workers. This allows managers to focus exclusively on control-plane duties.

Run the following command on any manager to prevent it from running user applications. You'll need to use the names of your managers, and you'll need to run it on all managers if you want to force user applications to run only on workers.

```
$ docker node update --availability drain mgr1
```

You'll see the impact of this in later steps when you deploy services with multiple replicas.

Now that you've built a swarm and understand the concepts of *leaders* and *manager HA*, let's move on to the application side of things.

Deploy and manage an app on swarm

Swarm nodes can run regular containers, but they can also run enhanced containers called *services*. Each *service* takes a single container definition and augments it with cloud-native features such as self-healing, scaling, and automated rollouts and rollbacks.

In this section, you'll deploy a simple web server as a *swarm service* and see how to scale it, perform rollouts, and delete it.

Swarm lets you create and manage services in two ways:

1. *Imperatively* on the command line
2. *Declaratively* with a Compose file

We'll look at Compose files in the next chapter. For now, we'll focus on the imperative method.

Run the following command to deploy a new service called **web-fe** with five identical replicas.

```
$ docker service create --name web-fe \
-p 8080:8080 \
--replicas 5 \
nigelpoulton/ddd-book:web0.1

z7ovearqmruwk0u2vc5o7ql0p
overall progress: 5 out of 5 tasks
1/5: running  [=====>]
2/5: running  [=====>]
3/5: running  [=====>]
4/5: running  [=====>]
5/5: running  [=====>]
verify: Service converged
```

The **docker service create** command tells Docker to deploy a new service. The **--name** flag calls this one **web-fe**, the **-p** flag maps port 8080 on every swarm node to 8080 inside of each service replica (container), and the **--replicas** flag tells Swarm to deploy five replicas of the service. The last line tells Swarm which image to build the replicas from.

Terminology: We use the terms *replicas* and *containers* interchangeably when referring to services. For example, a service defining five *replicas* will deploy five identical *containers*.

Your Docker client sent the command to a swarm manager, and the *leader manager* initiated the work to deploy the five replicas across the *swarm*. You configured this swarm so that user applications won't run on managers, meaning all five replicas will be running on your worker nodes. Each worker node that received a work task pulled the image, started the required containers, and created the port mappings.

However, it doesn't end there. The command you issued requested a new service with five replicas, and Swarm stored this in the cluster store as your *desired state*. In the background, Swarm runs a *reconciliation loop* that constantly compares the *observed state* of the cluster with the *desired state*. When the two states match, the world is a happy place, and no further action is needed. When they don't match, Swarm takes action to bring the *observed state* into line with *desired state*.

For example, if a *worker* hosting one of the five replicas fails, the *observed state* of the cluster will drop from 5 replicas to 4 and no longer match the *desired state* of 5. As soon as the swarm observes the difference, it will start a new replica to bring the *observed state* back in line with *desired state*. We call this *reconciliation* or *self-healing*, and it's a key tenet of cloud-native applications.

You'll soon learn that desired state and reconciliation are also at the heart of scaling, rollouts, and rollbacks.

Viewing and inspecting services

Run a **docker service ls** command to see a list of all the services on your swarm.

```
$ docker service ls
ID          NAME      MODE      REPLICAS      IMAGE
z7o...uw    web-fe    replicated  5/5        nigelpoulton/ddd...
                                                               *:8080->8080/tcp
```

The output shows a single service along with some basic config and state info. Among other things, you can see the name of the service and that all five replicas are running. Some of the replicas might not be in the running state if you run the command too soon after deploying the service. This is usually because the workers are still pulling the image and starting the replicas.

You can run a **docker service ps** command to see a list of service replicas and the state of each.

```
$ docker service ps web-fe
ID          NAME      IMAGE           NODE      DESIRED   CURRENT
817...f6z    web-fe.1  nigelpoulton/ddd-book:web0.1  wrk1     Running  Running  2 mins
a1d...mzn    web-fe.2  nigelpoulton/ddd-book:web0.1  wrk1     Running  Running  2 mins
cc0...ar0    web-fe.3  nigelpoulton/ddd-book:web0.1  wrk2     Running  Running  2 mins
6f0...azu    web-fe.4  nigelpoulton/ddd-book:web0.1  wrk1     Running  Running  2 mins
dyl...p3e    web-fe.5  nigelpoulton/ddd-book:web0.1  wrk2     Running  Running  2 mins
```

The output displays each replica on its own line, including the node it's running on and each replica's desired state and current observed state. As expected, you have five replicas balanced across all of your workers.

If you need detailed information about a service, you can run the **docker service inspect** command.

```
$ docker service inspect --pretty web-fe
ID: z7ovearqmrulk0u2vc5o7ql0p
Name: web-fe
Service Mode: Replicated
Replicas: 5
Placement:
UpdateConfig:
  Parallelism: 1
  On failure: pause
  Monitoring Period: 5s
  Max failure ratio: 0
  Update order: stop-first
RollbackConfig:
  Parallelism: 1
  On failure: pause
  Monitoring Period: 5s
  Max failure ratio: 0
  Rollback order: stop-first
ContainerSpec:
  Image: nigelpoulton/ddd-book:web0.1@sha256:8d6280c0042...1b9e4336730e5
  Init: false
Resources:
Endpoint Mode: vip
Ports:
  PublishedPort = 8080
  Protocol = tcp
  TargetPort = 8080
  PublishMode = ingress
```

The example uses the **--pretty** flag to limit the output to the most interesting items printed in an easy-to-read format. You'll get more info if you leave off the **--pretty** flag. I highly recommend reading through the output of **docker inspect** commands, as they're a great way to learn what's going on under the hood.

We'll come back to some of these outputs later.

Replicated vs global services

Swarm has two modes for deploying replicas to nodes:

- Replicated (default)
- Global

The default *replicated* mode allows you to deploy as many replicas as you need and attempts to distribute them evenly across available nodes.

The *global* mode deploys a single replica on every available node in the swarm.

Both modes respect node availability and will only deploy replicas to eligible nodes. For example, if you don't allow your swarm to deploy applications to managers, both modes will only deploy to workers.

If you want to deploy a *global service*, you need to pass the **--mode global** flag to the **docker service create** command. Obviously, it doesn't support the **--replicas** flag, as it always deploys a single replica on each available node.

Scaling services

Another powerful feature of *services* is the ability to scale them up and down by adding or removing replicas.

Assume business is booming and you're experiencing double the number of requests to your web front-end. Fortunately, you can easily scale the number of replicas with the **docker service scale** command.

Run the following command to scale the **web-fe** service from 5 to 10 replicas.

```
$ docker service scale web-fe=10
web-fe scaled to 10
overall progress: 10 out of 10 tasks
1/10: running  [=====>]
2/10: running  [=====>]
3/10: running  [=====>]
4/10: running  [=====>]
5/10: running  [=====>]
6/10: running  [=====>]
7/10: running  [=====>]
8/10: running  [=====>]
9/10: running  [=====>]
10/10: running [=====>]
verify: Service web-fe converged
```

Behind the scenes, the command updated the desired state of the **web-fe** service in the cluster store from 5 replicas to 10. The reconciliation loop read the new desired state of 10 replicas, compared it with the current observed state of 5 replicas, and added 5 more to bring the observed state into sync with the new desired state.

Run another **docker service ls** to verify the operation completed successfully.

```
$ docker service ls
ID      NAME      MODE      REPLICAS      IMAGE
z7o...uw  web-fe   replicated  10/10        nigelpoulton/ddd...  *:8080->8080/tcp
```

If you run a **docker service ps**, you'll see that the replicas are balanced evenly across all available nodes. In this example, they're balanced across both available workers. If your swarm had ten worker nodes, you would probably have one replica running on each worker.

```
$ docker service ps web-fe
ID          NAME      IMAGE
nwf...tpn  web-fe.1  nigelpoulton/ddd-book:web0.1
yb0...e3e  web-fe.2  nigelpoulton/ddd-book:web0.1
mos...gf6  web-fe.3  nigelpoulton/ddd-book:web0.1
utn...6ak  web-fe.4  nigelpoulton/ddd-book:web0.1
2ge...fyy  web-fe.5  nigelpoulton/ddd-book:web0.1
64y...m49  web-fe.6  nigelpoulton/ddd-book:web0.1
ild...51s  web-fe.7  nigelpoulton/ddd-book:web0.1
vah...rjf  web-fe.8  nigelpoulton/ddd-book:web0.1
xe7...fvu  web-fe.9  nigelpoulton/ddd-book:web0.1
l7k...jkv  web-fe.10 nigelpoulton/ddd-book:web0.1
NODE      DESIRED  CURRENT
wrk1     Running  Running  7 mins
wrk2     Running  Running  7 mins
wrk2     Running  Running  7 mins
wrk1     Running  Running  7 mins
wrk2     Running  Running  7 mins
wrk2     Running  Running about a min
wrk1     Running  Running about a min
wrk1     Running  Running about a min
wrk2     Running  Running  45 secs ago
wrk1     Running  Running  46 secs ago
```

Behind the scenes, Swarm runs a scheduling algorithm called *spread* that attempts to balance replicas as evenly as possible across available nodes.

Run another **docker service scale** command to bring the number of replicas back down to 5.

```
$ docker service scale web-fe=5
web-fe scaled to 5
overall progress: 5 out of 5 tasks
1/5: running  [=====>]
2/5: running  [=====>]
3/5: running  [=====>]
4/5: running  [=====>]
5/5: running  [=====>]
verify: Service web-fe converged
```

Now that you know how to scale services, let's see how to delete them.

Deleting services

Deleting services is simple — may be too simple.

Run the following command to delete the web-fe service. Be careful using this command, as it doesn't ask for confirmation.

```
$ docker service rm web-fe
web-fe
```

Confirm it's gone.

```
$ docker service ls
ID      NAME      MODE      REPLICAS      IMAGE      PORTS
```

Let's look at how to perform a rollout.

Rollouts

Application updates are a fact of life, and for the longest time they were painful. I've personally lost more than enough weekends to major application updates and I've no intention of doing it again.

Fortunately, thanks to Docker *services*, updating well-designed microservices apps is easy.

Terminology: We use terms like *rollouts*, *updates*, and *rolling updates* to mean the same thing — updating a live application.

You're about to deploy a new service to help demonstrate a rollout. However, before doing that, you'll create a new overlay network for the service. This isn't necessary, but I want you to see how to attach services to networks.

Run the following two commands to create a new overlay network called **uber-net** and then check if it exists.

```
$ docker network create -d overlay uber-net
43wfp6pzea470et4d57udn9ws

$ docker network ls
NETWORK ID      NAME      DRIVER      SCOPE
43wfp6pzea47      uber-net      overlay      swarm
<Snip>
```

The new network exists and was successfully created as an *overlay* network scoped to the entire *swarm*. You'll learn about overlay networks in a later chapter, but for now, it's enough to know that they span all swarm nodes and that all containers on the same overlay network can communicate, even if they're deployed on different nodes.

Figure 10.5 shows four swarm nodes connected to two different underlay networks connected by a layer 3 router. The overlay network spans all four nodes and creates a single flat layer 2 network abstracting all the underlying networks. All container replicas are connected to the overlay and can communicate with each other.

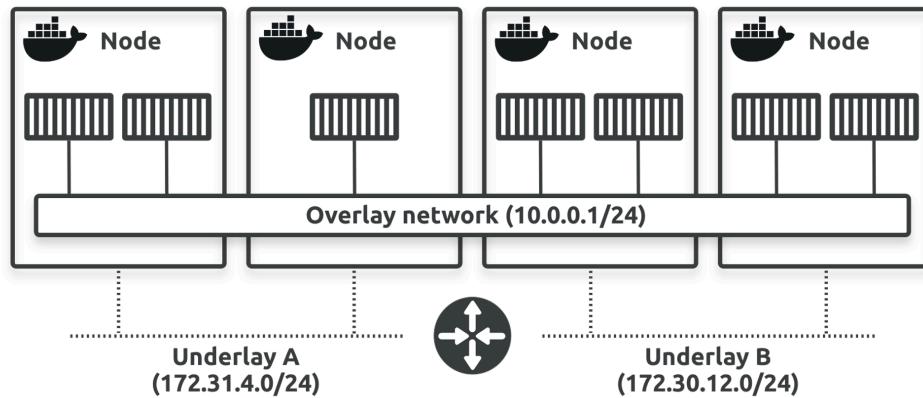


Figure 10.5

Let's create a new service and attach it to the **uber-net** network.

```
$ docker service create --name uber-svc \
--network uber-net \
-p 8080:8080 --replicas 12 \
nigelpoulton/ddd-book:web.0.1

dhbtgvqrg2q4sg07tfuhg8nz
overall progress: 12 out of 12 tasks
1/12: running  [=====>]
2/12: running  [=====>]
3/12: running  [=====>]
<Snip>
12/12: running  [=====>]
verify: Service converged
```

Let's step through what just happened.

On the first line, you named the service **uber-svc**. You then used the **--network** flag to tell Docker to attach all service replicas to the new **uber-net** network. Then, you mapped 8080 on every swarm node to port 8080 in all 12 replicas. Finally, you told Docker which image to base the 12 replicas on.

This mode of publishing a service on every swarm node, including nodes not even running replicas, is called *ingress mode* and is the default. The alternative is *host mode*, which only publishes a service on nodes running replicas.

Run a **docker service ls** and a **docker service ps** to verify the state of the service and each replica.

```
$ docker service ls
ID          NAME      REPLICAS  IMAGE
dhbtgvqrg2q4  uber-svc  12/12     nigelpoulton/ddd-book:web0.1

$ docker service ps uber-svc
ID          NAME      IMAGE           NODE  DESIRED  CURRENT STATE
0v...7e5    uber-svc.1  nigelpoulton/ddd-book:web0.1  wrk1  Running  Running 1 min
bh...wa0    uber-svc.2  nigelpoulton/ddd-book:web0.1  wrk2  Running  Running 1 min
23...u97    uber-svc.3  nigelpoulton/ddd-book:web0.1  wrk2  Running  Running 1 min
82...5y1    uber-svc.4  nigelpoulton/ddd-book:web0.1  wrk2  Running  Running 1 min
c3...gny    uber-svc.5  nigelpoulton/ddd-book:web0.1  wrk1  Running  Running 1 min
e6...3u0    uber-svc.6  nigelpoulton/ddd-book:web0.1  wrk2  Running  Running 1 min
78...r7z    uber-svc.7  nigelpoulton/ddd-book:web0.1  wrk1  Running  Running 1 min
2m...kdz    uber-svc.8  nigelpoulton/ddd-book:web0.1  wrk2  Running  Running 1 min
b9...k7w    uber-svc.9  nigelpoulton/ddd-book:web0.1  wrk1  Running  Running 1 min
ag...v16    uber-svc.10  nigelpoulton/ddd-book:web0.1  wrk2  Running  Running 1 min
e6...dfk    uber-svc.11  nigelpoulton/ddd-book:web0.1  wrk1  Running  Running 1 min
e2...k1j    uber-svc.12  nigelpoulton/ddd-book:web0.1  wrk1  Running  Running 1 min
```

Connect to the service by opening a web browser and pointing it to the IP address of any swarm node on port 8080. If you're following along on Multipass, you'll need to connect to the 192.168 address of one of your nodes.

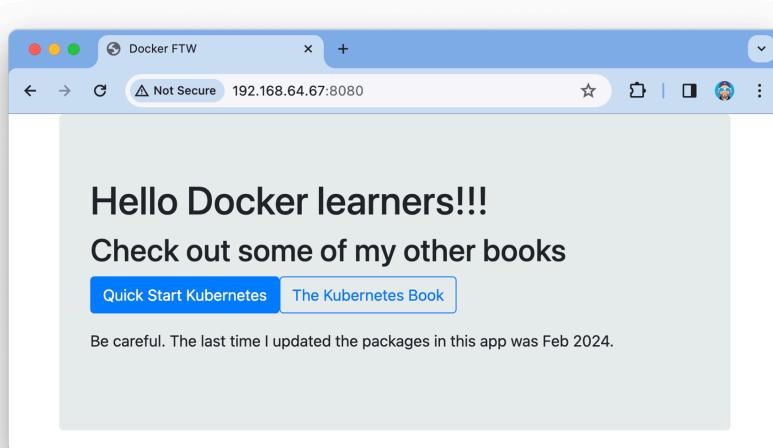


Figure 10.6

You should also point your browser to the IP of one of your managers to prove you can access the service from nodes that are not running replicas. That's the beauty of *ingress mode* — you can access a service from every node in the cluster, even nodes not running replicas.

Right now, the web page has links to two books. Let's assume you need to add a third book. In the real world, you'd update the app code and create a new image containing the updates. I've already done this and uploaded the image to the same Docker Hub repo with the **web0.2** tag. All that's left for you to do is perform the rollout.

Let's assume you need the rollout to proceed in a staged manner by updating two replicas at a time with a 20-second delay between each. You can use the following command to accomplish this.

```
$ docker service update \
  --image nigelpoulton/ddd-book:web0.2 \
  --update-parallelism 2 \
  --update-delay 20s \
  uber-svc

uber-svc
overall progress: 2 out of 12 tasks
1/12: running  [=====>]
2/12: running  [=====>]
3/12: ready    [=====>]
4/12: ready    [=====>]
5/12:
6/12:
<Snip>
11/12:
12/12:
```

Let's review the command.

docker service update lets you update existing services. This example tells Docker to update all 12 replicas to the new **web0.2** version of the image. The **--update-parallelism** flag tells Docker to update two replicas at a time, and the **--update-delay** flag tells Docker to insert a 20-second cool-off period after each batch of updates. The last line tells it which service to update.

If you run a **docker service ps** **uber-svc** while the update is in progress, some replicas will show the new version and some will show the old version. If you give the operation enough time to complete, all replicas will eventually reach the new desired state and show the **web0.2** image.

```
$ docker service ps uber-svc
ID      NAME      IMAGE          NODE  DESIRED  CURRENT STATE
7z...nys  uber-svc.1  nigelpoulton/ddd-book:web0.2  wrk1  Running  Running 13 secs
0v...7e5  \_uber-svc.1  nigelpoulton/ddd-book:web0.1  wrk1  Shutdown  Shutdown 13 secs
bh...wa0  uber-svc.2  nigelpoulton/ddd-book:web0.1  wrk2  Running  Running 1 min
e3...gr2  uber-svc.3  nigelpoulton/ddd-book:web0.2  wrk2  Running  Running 13 secs
23...u97  \_uber-svc.3  nigelpoulton/ddd-book:web0.1  wrk2  Shutdown  Shutdown 13 secs
82...5y1  uber-svc.4  nigelpoulton/ddd-book:web0.1  wrk2  Running  Running 1 min
c3...gny  uber-svc.5  nigelpoulton/ddd-book:web0.1  wrk1  Running  Running 1 min
e6...3u0  uber-svc.6  nigelpoulton/ddd-book:web0.1  wrk2  Running  Running 1 min
78...r7z  uber-svc.7  nigelpoulton/ddd-book:web0.1  wrk1  Running  Running 1 min
2m...kdz  uber-svc.8  nigelpoulton/ddd-book:web0.1  wrk2  Running  Running 1 min
b9...k7w  uber-svc.9  nigelpoulton/ddd-book:web0.1  wrk1  Running  Running 1 min
ag...v16  uber-svc.10  nigelpoulton/ddd-book:web0.1  wrk2  Running  Running 1 min
e6...dfk  uber-svc.11  nigelpoulton/ddd-book:web0.1  wrk1  Running  Running 1 min
e2...k1j  uber-svc.12  nigelpoulton/ddd-book:web0.1  wrk1  Running  Running 1 min
```

You can observe the update in real-time by opening a web browser to any swarm node on port 8080 and hitting refresh a few times. Some of the requests will respond with the old version and some will respond with the new. After enough time, all requests will retrieve the new version.

Congratulations. You've just completed a zero-downtime rolling update of a live containerized application.

If you run a **docker service inspect --pretty** command against the service, you'll see the *update parallelism* and *update delay* settings have been merged into the service's definition. This means future updates will automatically use these settings unless you override them as part of the update command.

```
$ docker service inspect --pretty uber-svc
ID:          mub0dgtc8szm80ez5bs8wl19
Name:        uber-svc
Service Mode: Replicated
Replicas:    12
<Snip>
UpdateConfig:
  Parallelism: 2      <<-----
  Delay:       20s     <<-----
<Snip>
```

Service logs

You can inspect a service's logs with the **docker service logs** command. It gathers the logs from every replica and displays them in a single output.

If you've been following along, you'll have a service called **uber-svc** with 12 replicas mapped to port 8080 on every cluster node. Open a browser tab to the IP address of any cluster node on port 8080 and refresh the page a few times.

Now run a **docker service logs** command to see any log messages generated by the service.

```
$ docker service logs uber-svc
uber-svc.8.r33cra80eeut@wrk1      | {"level":"info","message":"/"}
uber-svc.2.vid8et52oj48@wrk1       | {"level":"info","message":"/"}
uber-svc.7.jv67x3zfkyar@wrk2      | {"level":"info","message":"/"}
uber-svc.1.zlmvvo5k1i56@wrk2      | {"level":"info","message":"/"}
uber-svc.3.kleey0vuue5@wrk2      | {"level":"info","message":"/"}
```

The output shows five lines relating to five requests serviced by five different replicas. The long string on the left of each line is the name of the replica which Docker creates by concatenating the service name, replica number, replica ID, and the name of the node it's scheduled on. The following table maps the names of the five replicas that serviced requests.

Service name	Replica number	Replica ID	node
uber-svc	8	r33cra80eeut	@wrk1
uber-svc	2	vid8et52oj48	@wrk1
uber-svc	7	jv67x3zfkyar	@wrk2
uber-svc	1	zlmvvo5k1i56	@wrk2
uber-svc	3	kleey0vuue5	@wrk2

Notice how Swarm balanced the requests across five different replicas. In the real world, your requests probably won't be as evenly balanced as this due to the way browsers and different tools create and handle requests. However, if you refresh enough times, you'll eventually see the requests being serviced by different replicas.

By default, Docker configures services to use the **json-file** log driver, but other drivers exist, including:

- awslogs
- gelf
- gcplogs
- journald (only works on Linux hosts running `systemd`)
- splunk
- syslog

json-file and **journald** are the easiest to configure, and they both work with the **docker service logs** command. However, other drivers don't always work with the native Docker commands and you may have to use the logging platform's native tools.

The following snippet is from a **daemon.json** configuration file on a Docker host configured to use the **syslog** driver. The **daemon.json** file is usually located in **/etc/-docker/daemon.json**, but sometimes it doesn't exist unless you create it manually for custom settings.

```
{  
  "log-driver": "syslog"  
}
```

You can force new services to use specific log drivers by starting them with the **--log-driver** and **--log-opts** flags. Doing this will override anything set in the **daemon.json** file.

Service logs expect applications to run as PID 1 and send logs to **STDOUT** and errors to **STDERR**. The logging driver then forwards the logs to the locations configured via the logging driver.

You can run a **docker service logs** command with the **--follow** flag to follow logs, the **--tail** flag to tail them, and the **--details** flag to get extra information.

Docker Swarm – The Commands

- **docker swarm init** creates a new swarm. The node you run the command on becomes the first manager and the Docker Engine on that node switches into swarm mode.
- **docker swarm join-token** reveals the commands and tokens you need to join workers and managers to the swarm. You add **manager** to the command to get the manager join token and **worker** to get the worker token. Be sure to keep your join tokens secure!
- **docker node ls** lists managers and workers, including which manager is the leader.
- **docker service create** creates a new service.
- **docker service ls** lists running services and gives basic information on their state and the number of replicas they're running.
- **docker service ps <service>** gives more detailed information about individual service replicas.
- **docker service inspect** gives very detailed information on a service. You can add the **--pretty** flag to get a nicely formatted summary view.
- **docker service scale** lets you scale the number of service replicas.
- **docker service update** lets you update the properties of a running service.

- **docker service logs** shows service logs.
- **docker service rm** deletes a service without asking for confirmation.

Chapter summary

Swarm is Docker's native technology for managing clusters of Docker nodes and orchestrating microservices applications. It is similar to Kubernetes but less advanced and easier to use.

The enterprise-grade clustering component offers a wealth of security and HA features that are automatically configured and extremely simple to modify.

The orchestration component deploys and manages cloud-native microservices applications.

11: Deploying apps with Docker Stacks

Deploying and managing cloud-native microservices applications at scale is hard. Fortunately, Docker Stacks are here to help.

I've split this chapter as follows:

- Deploying apps with Docker Stacks – The TLDR
- Build a Swarm lab
- The sample app
- Deploy the app
- Manage the app

Deploying apps with Docker Stacks – The TLDR

Docker Stacks combine Compose and Swarm to create a platform for easy deployment and management of complex multi-container apps on secure, highly available infrastructure.

You build a swarm, define your apps in Compose files, and deploy and manage them with the `docker stack` command.

From an architecture perspective, stacks are at the top of the Docker application hierarchy — they build on top of *services*, which in turn build on top of containers, and they only run on swarms.

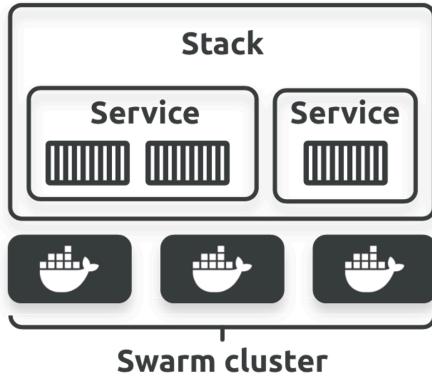


Figure 11.1

If you've been following along, you'll already know Compose and Swarm and find Docker Stacks easy.

Build a Swarm lab

This section shows you how to build a three-node swarm lab with a single manager and two workers. You can skip to the next section if you already have a swarm.

You can build the lab in Multipass, Play with Docker, or just about any Docker environment. However, I don't recommend using Docker Desktop, as you only get a single swarm node.

Run the following command from the node that will be your swarm manager.

```
$ docker swarm init
Swarm initialized: current node (lhma...w4nn) is now a manager.
<Snip>
```

Copy the **docker swarm join** command shown in the output and paste it into the two nodes you want to join as workers.

Worker 1

```
$ docker swarm join --token SWMTKN-1-2hl6...-...3lqg 172.31.40.192:2377
This node joined a swarm as a worker.
```

Worker 2

```
$ docker swarm join --token SWMTKN-1-2hl6....-...3lqg 172.31.40.192:2377
This node joined a swarm as a worker.
```

Run the following command from your manager node to confirm the swarm is initialized with one manager and two workers.

```
$ docker node ls
ID          HOSTNAME  STATUS  AVAILABILITY  MANAGER STATUS
lhm...4nn *  mgr1      Ready   Active        Leader
b74...gz3    wrk1      Ready   Active
o9x...um8    wrk2      Ready   Active
```

Now that you have a swarm lab, let's look at the sample app.

The sample app

Figure 11.2 shows the application we'll use for the rest of the chapter. It's a multi-container microservices application with:

- Two services (**web-fe** and **redis**)
- An encrypted overlay network (**counter-net**)
- A volume (**counter-vol**)
- A published port (5001)

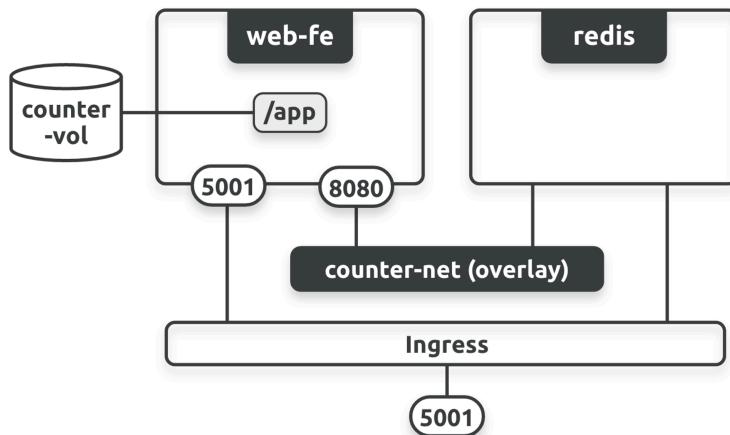


Figure 11.2

Terminology: Throughout this chapter, we'll use the term *service* to refer to the Docker service object that manages one or more identical containers on a swarm. We'll also refer to the Compose file as the *stack file*, and sometimes we'll refer to the application as the *stack*.

If you haven't already done so, log on to a swarm manager and clone the book's GitHub repo.

```
$ git clone https://github.com/nigelpoulton/ddd-book.git
Cloning into 'ddd-book'...
remote: Enumerating objects: 8904, done.
remote: Counting objects: 100% (74/74), done.
remote: Compressing objects: 100% (52/52), done.
remote: Total 8904 (delta 21), reused 70 (delta 18), pack-reused 8830
Receiving objects: 100% (8904/8904), 74.00 MiB | 4.18 MiB/s, done.
Resolving deltas: 100% (1378/1378), done.
```

Change directory into the **ddd-book/swarm-app** folder.

```
$ cd ddd-book/swarm-app
```

Feel free to look at the application in the **app** subfolder, but we'll focus on the **compose.yaml** file.

If you look at the Compose file, you'll see it has three top-level keys.

- networks
- volumes
- services

Networks is where you define the networks the app needs, **volumes** defines the volumes it needs, and **services** defines the microservices that make up the app. The file is a simple example of *infrastructure as code* — the application and its infrastructure are defined in a configuration file that you deploy and manage them from.

If you expand each top-level key, you'll see how things map to Figure 11.2 with a network called **counter-net**, a volume called **counter-vol**, and two services called **web-fe** and **redis**.

```
networks:  
  counter-net:  
volumes:  
  counter-vol:  
services:  
  web-fe:  
  redis:
```

Let's look at each section of the *stack file*.

Looking closer at the stack file

Stack files are identical to Compose files with a few differences at run-time. For example, Docker Compose lets you build images at run-time, but Docker Stacks don't.

Let's look at the networking elements defined in our stack file.

Networks and networking

One of the first things Docker does when you deploy an app from a stack file is create the networks listed under the **networks** key. If they already exist, Docker doesn't need to do anything. But if they don't exist, it creates them.

This app defines a single encrypted overlay network called **counter-net**.

```
networks:  
  counter-net:      <<---- Network name  
    driver: overlay   <<---- Driver/type of network  
    driver_opts:  
      encrypted: 'yes' <<---- Encrypt the data plane
```

It needs to be an overlay network so it can span all nodes in the swarm.

Encrypting the data plane will keep the application traffic private, but it incurs a performance penalty that varies based on factors such as traffic type and traffic flow. It's not uncommon for the performance penalty to be around 10%, but you should perform your own testing against your own applications.

The stack also publishes the **web-fe** service on port 5001 on the swarm-wide *ingress network* and maps it back to port 8080 on all service replicas. This allows external clients to reach the service by hitting any swarm node on port 5001.

```
services:  
  web-fe:  
    <Snip>  
    ports:  
      - target: 8080      <<---- Service replicas listen on this port  
        published: 5001    <<---- and are published externally on this port
```

Let's look at the volumes and mounts.

Volumes and mounts

The app defines a single volume called **counter-vol** and mounts it into the **/app** directory on all **web-fe** replicas. This means all reads and writes to the **/app** folder will be read and written to the volume.

```
volumes:  
  counter-vol:          <<---- Volume name  
  
services:  
  web-fe:  
    <Snip>  
    volumes:  
      - type: volume  
        source: counter-vol   <<---- Mount the "counter-vol" volume to  
        target: /app           <<---- "/app" in all service replicas
```

Let's look at the services.

Services

Services are where most of the action happens. Our application defines two, and we'll look at each in turn.

The **web-fe** service

As you can see, the **web-fe** service defines an image, an app, the desired number of replicas, rules for updating the app, a restart policy, which network to connect to, which ports to publish, and how to mount a volume. That's a lot to take in, so I've annotated it in the book. Take a minute to read through the file and annotations.

```

web-fe:
  image: nigelpoulton/ddd-book:swarm-app    <<---- Create all replicas with this image
  command: python app.py                      <<---- Run this command when each replica starts
  deploy:
    replicas: 4                                <<---- Deploy 4 replicas
    update_config:
      parallelism: 2                           <---- When you perform an update,
      delay: 10s                                | update 2 replicas at a time,
      failure_action: rollback                  | wait 10 seconds in between each set of two replicas
      placement:
        constraints:
          - 'node.role == worker'               <---- and perform a rollback if you encounter issues
      restart_policy:
        condition: on-failure                 <---- Only run replicas on worker nodes
        delay: 5s                               | Only restart replicas if
        max_attempts: 3                         | they've failed (non-zero return code),
        window: 120s                            | wait five seconds between each restart attempt,
                                                | only try three restarts,
                                                | and give up trying after two minutes
    networks:
      - counter-net                           <<---- Connect replicas to the "counter-net" network
    ports:
      - published: 5001
        target: 8080                          <---- Publish the service externally on port 5001 and
                                                <---- map traffic to each replica on port 8080
    volumes:
      - type: volume
        source: counter-vol
        target: /app                           <---- Mount the "counter-vol" volume to
                                                <---- "/app" in each service replica

```

The **image** key is the only mandatory key and tells Docker which image to use when creating service replicas. Swarm stacks don't support building images at deploy time, so the image must exist before you deploy the app. Docker is also *opinionated* and assumes you want to pull images from Docker Hub. However, you can add the registry's DNS name before the image name if you want to use a third-party registry. For example, adding `ghcr.io` before an image name will pull it from GitHub Container Registry.

The **command** key tells Docker how to start the app in each replica. Our example tells it to execute `python app.py` in replicas.

The **deploy.replicas** key tells Swarm to deploy and manage four service replicas (identical containers).

```

web-fe:
  deploy:
    replicas: 4

```

If you need to change the number of replicas after you've deployed the service, you should update the value of **deploy.replicas** in the stack file and then redeploy the stack. We'll see this later.

The **deploy.update_config** block tells Docker how to perform rollouts.

```
web-fe:
  deploy:
    update_config:
      parallelism: 2
      delay: 10s
      failure_action: rollback
```

This application tells Docker to update two replicas at a time, wait 10 seconds between each set of two, and perform a rollback if it encounters any problems.

Rolling back replaces the new replicas with fresh copies of the old version. The default value for **failure_action** is **pause**, which will halt the update where it is and may result in some replicas running the old version and some running the new. The other option is **continue**.

The **deploy.placement** block forces all replicas onto worker nodes. You'll need to delete this section if you're running a single-node cluster with one manager and zero workers.

```
web-fe:
  deploy:
    placement:
      constraints:
        - 'node.role == worker'
```

The **deploy.restart_policy** block tells Docker what to do when it encounters a failure during a rollout.

```
web-fe:
  deploy:
    restart_policy:
      condition: on-failure
      max_attempts: 3
      delay: 5s
      window: 120s
```

This app tells Docker to restart replicas if they fail, to attempt a maximum of 3 restarts, to wait 5 seconds between each restart attempt, and to wait up to 120 seconds to decide if the restart worked.

The **networks** key tells Docker to attach all replicas to the **counter-net** network.

```
web-fe:
  networks:
    - counter-net
```

The **ports** block publishes the app on port 5001 on the ingress network and port 8080 on the counter-net network. This means external traffic can hit any swarm node on 5001 and get redirected to the service replicas on 8080.

```
web-fe:  
  ports:  
    - published: 5001  
      target: 8080
```

Finally, the **volumes** block mounts the **counter-vol** volume into each service replica's **/app** directory.

```
web-fe:  
  volumes:  
    - type: volume  
      source: counter-vol  
      target: /app
```

The redis service

The **redis** service is much simpler. It pulls the **redis:alpine** image, starts a single replica, and attaches it to the **counter-net** network. This is the same network as the **web-fe** service, meaning the two services will be able to communicate with each other by name ("redis" and "web-fe").

```
redis:  
  image: "redis:alpine"  
  networks:  
    counter-net:
```

As previously mentioned, Compose files are a great source of application documentation. We can read this file and know the application has two services, two networks, and one volume. We know how the services communicate, how they're published outside of the swarm, and a bit about how they'll be deployed, updated, and restarted from failures.

Let's deploy and manage the app.

Deploying the app

If you plan on following this section, you'll need a copy of the book's GitHub repo and a swarm. The examples use a three-node swarm with a single manager called **mgr1** and two workers called **wrk1** and **wrk2**.

Deploy the app

You deploy Stacks with the **docker stack deploy** command, and in its basic form it accepts two arguments:

- The name of the stack file (Compose file)
- The name of the stack (app)

We'll use the **compose.yaml** file in the **ddd-book/swarm-app** folder, and we'll call the app **ddd**.

Run all of the following commands from the **swarm-app** directory on a swarm manager.

Deploy the stack.

```
$ docker stack deploy -c compose.yaml ddd
Creating network ddd_counter-net
Creating service ddd_web-fe
Creating service ddd_redis
```

A few things to note from the output.

Docker creates the networks and volumes before services. This is because services consume networks and volumes, and will fail to start if they don't exist.

Docker also prefixes the name of the stack to every resource. We called our stack **ddd**, meaning Docker will prefix every resource name with **ddd**:

- **ddd_counter-net**
- **ddd_counter-vol**
- **ddd_web-fe**
- **ddd_redis**

You can check the status of services, volumes, and networks with their usual commands, but the **docker stack** command also has a couple of options for checking stack status:

- **docker stack ls** prints a list of running stacks and how many services they have
- **docker stack ps <stack-name>** gives more detailed information about a specific stack and its replicas

Let's look at both.

```
$ docker stack ls
NAME      SERVICES
ddd        2

$ docker stack ps ddd
NAME          IMAGE              NODE  DESIRED STATE  CURRENT STATE
ddd_redis.1   redis:alpine     mgr1  Running       Running 4 mins
ddd_web-fe.1  nigelpoulton/ddd-book:swarm-app wrk1  Running       Running 4 mins
ddd_web-fe.2  nigelpoulton/ddd-book:swarm-app wrk2  Running       Running 4 mins
ddd_web-fe.3  nigelpoulton/ddd-book:swarm-app wrk2  Running       Running 4 mins
<Snip>
ddd_web-fe.10 nigelpoulton/ddd-book:swarm-app wrk1  Running       Running 4 mins
```

The **docker stack ps** command is great for troubleshooting services. You can see the image each replica is based on, which nodes replicas are running on, and *desired state* and *current state*.

The following output shows two failed attempts to start **web-fe** replicas on the **wrk2** node.

```
$ docker stack ps ddd
NAME      NODE  DESIRED  CURRENT  ERROR
web-fe.1  wrk2  Shutdown  Failed   "task: non-zero exit (1)"
\_web-fe.1 wrk2  Shutdown  Failed   "task: non-zero exit (1)"
```

You can also use the **docker service logs** command to inspect service logs. If you pass it the service name or ID, you'll get the logs for all service replicas. If you pass it a specific replica name or ID, you'll only get the logs for that replica.

The following example shows the logs for all replicas in the **ddd_web-fe** service.

```
$ docker service logs ddd_web-fe
ddd_web-fe.9.i23puo71kq12@node2  |  * Serving Flask app 'app'
ddd_web-fe.5.z4otpnrvc58@node2  |  * Debug mode: on
<Snip>
ddd_web-fe.6.novrxi5iuxy@node2  |  * Debug mode: on
ddd_web-fe.6.novrxi5iuxy@node2  |  * Debugger is active!
ddd_web-fe.6.novrxi5iuxy@node2  |  * Debugger PIN: 127-233-151
```

You can follow logs (**--follow**), tail them (**--tail**), and you can sometimes get extra details (**--details**).

So far, you've used Docker commands to prove the stack is up and running. However, you can also test it with your browser.

Run a **docker stack services** command to discover the port the **web-fe** service is published on.

```
$ docker stack services ddd
NAME      MODE      REPLICAS  IMAGE
ddd_redis  replicated  1/1      redis:alpine
ddd_web-fe replicated  4/4      nigelpoulton/ddd-book:swarm-app  *:5001->8080/tcp
```

It's published on port 5001, meaning you can point your browser to the name or IP of any swarm node on 5001. If you're using Multipass, the node IPs usually start with 192.168, and you can find them by running a `multipass list` command from your host's terminal. Alternatively, you can run an `ip a` command inside a VM and use the IP address of the `enp0s1` interface.

Figure 11.3 shows a browser connecting to the app via a swarm node with the 192.168.64.41 IP address.

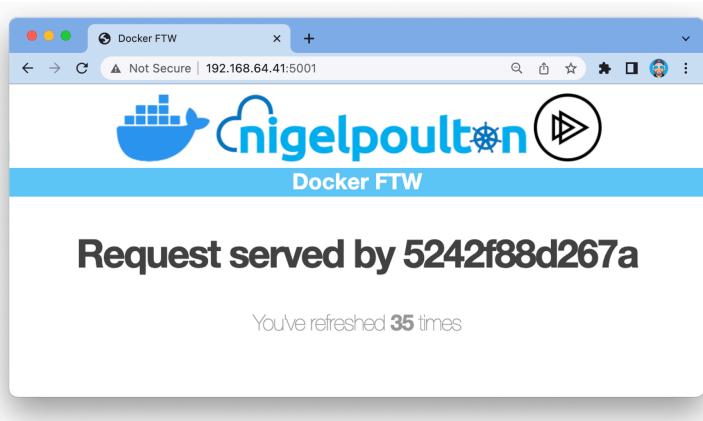


Figure 11.3

Let's switch tack and see how to manage swarm stacks.

Managing the app

There are two ways to manage Docker stacks:

- Imperatively
- Declaratively

The *imperative method* is where you run Docker commands to make changes to the stack. For example, using the `docker service scale` command to increase and decrease the number of service replicas.

The *declarative method* is where you make all changes via the stack file. For example, if you want to change the number of service replicas, you edit the stack file with the desired replica count and run another **docker stack deploy** command.

The declarative method is the preferred method.

Consider the following example that demonstrates why you should manage stacks declaratively.

*Imagine you've deployed an app from a stack file that includes a **reporting** service and a **catalog** service. The stack file includes other services that are part of the app, but we're only interested in these two. It's currently running five replicas of the reporting service, but year-end reporting has started, and it's experiencing slow performance due to increased demand. You decide to run an imperative **docker service scale** command to increase the number of reporting replicas to 10. This fixes the performance issues, but the current state of the app is out of sync with the stack file — the stack file defines five replicas but the cluster is running 10. Later in the day, a colleague is tasked with rolling out a new version of the catalog service — the catalog service is part of the same app and, therefore, is defined in the same stack file as the reporting service. Your colleague makes the changes declaratively by editing the stack file with the new version of the catalog service and running a **docker stack deploy** command to push the updates. When Docker receives the updated version of the stack file, it rolls out the new version of the catalog service and changes the number of reporting replicas back to five. This will cause the reporting service to start running slowly again.*

This is why you should make all changes declaratively via your stack files and manage them in a version control system.

Getting back to the app you deployed, let's do the following:

- Increase the number of **web-fe** replicas from 4 to 10
- Update the **web-fe** service to the newer **swarm-appv2** image

Edit the **compose.yaml**, increase the **web-fe** replica count to 10, and change the image to **swarm-appv2**.

```
<Snip>
services:
  web-fe:
    image: nigelpoulton/ddd-book:swarm-appv2      <---- changed to swarm-appv2
    command: python app.py
    deploy:
      replicas: 10                                <---- Changed from 4 to 10
    <Snip>
```

Save your changes and redeploy the app. This will cause Docker to *rollout* a new version of the **web-fe** service with all 10 replicas running the new image.

```
$ docker stack deploy -c compose.yaml ddd
Updating service ddd_redis (id: ozljsazuv7mmh14ep70pv43cf)
Updating service ddd_web-fe (id: zbbplw0hul2gbr593mvwszl5i)
```

Even though it looks like Docker has redeployed both services, it hasn't. It's clever enough only to redeploy the bits you've changed.

Run a **docker stack ps** to see the rollout's progress.

```
$ docker stack ps ddd
NAME           IMAGE
ddd_web-fe.1   nigelpoulton/ddd-book:swarm-app
ddd_web-fe.2   nigelpoulton/ddd-book:swarm-appv2
\_\_ddd_web-fe.2   nigelpoulton/ddd-book:swarm-app
ddd_web-fe.3   nigelpoulton/ddd-book:swarm-app
<Snip>
```

I've trimmed the output to fit the book, and I've only listed some of the replicas. However, you can see a few things.

The top line shows the **ddd_web-fe.1** replica running the old image for the last 8 minutes.

The next two lines show the **ddd_web-fe.2** replica. You can see the old copy was running the old image, was shut down 26 seconds ago, and was replaced with a new version running the new image. The new replica has been running for 13 seconds.

The last line shows the **ddd_web-fe.3** replica is still running the old version.

It's important to emphasize two things.

First, Docker followed the rules in the **deploy.update_config** section of the Compose file. If you look at that section of the file again, you'll see that Docker can update two replicas, wait for 10 seconds, update the next two, wait 10 seconds, and then attempt a rollback to the previous version if it encounters any issues.

```
web-fe:
  deploy:
    update_config:
      parallelism: 2
      delay: 10s
      failure_action: rollback
```

Second, containers are immutable and Docker didn't *update* the existing containers to run the new image. It deleted and replaced them with new containers running the new image.

After a short period, all 10 replicas will be running updated image.

Refresh your browser to make sure you see the updated version of the app with a purple **WebAssembly is the future** banner.

Something needs to be fixed because it still displays the old web page.

The issue is with the volume. Let's walk through what happened.

The new image has the updated app version with the purple **WebAssembly is the future** banner. The rollout deleted the old replicas and replaced them with new ones running the new version of the app. So far, so good. However, when Docker started each new replica, it mounted the old volume with the old app version. This had the effect of overwriting the new version of the app with the old.

You should be aware of this when working with volumes. However, it will usually be fine because you typically only use volumes for data stores, not for hosting application binaries.

Let's assume you realize the **web-fe** service is stateless and doesn't require a volume. The declarative way to remove the volume is to edit the Compose file again, remove the volume and volume mount, and redeploy the app. Let's do it.

Edit the **compose.yaml** file and make the following changes.

```
volumes:           <----- Delete this line
  counter-vol:    <----- Delete this line
<Snip>
services:
  web-fe:
    image: nigelpoulton/ddd-book:swarm-appv2
    <Snip>
    volumes:           <----- Delete this line
      - type: volume <----- Delete this line
        source: counter-vol <----- Delete this line
        target: /app    <----- Delete this line
```

Save your changes and redeploy.

```
$ docker stack deploy -c compose.yaml ddd
Updating service ddd_redis (id: ozljsazuv7mmh14ep70pv43cf)
Updating service ddd_web-fe (id: zbbplw0hul2gbr593mvwsrz5i)
```

The stack will update two replicas at a time and wait 10 seconds between each. Once the stack has converged and all replicas are updated, you should see the new version of the app as shown in Figure 11.4. Refresh your browser a few times to make sure it works. Don't worry if some requests get the old version while the rollout is in progress.

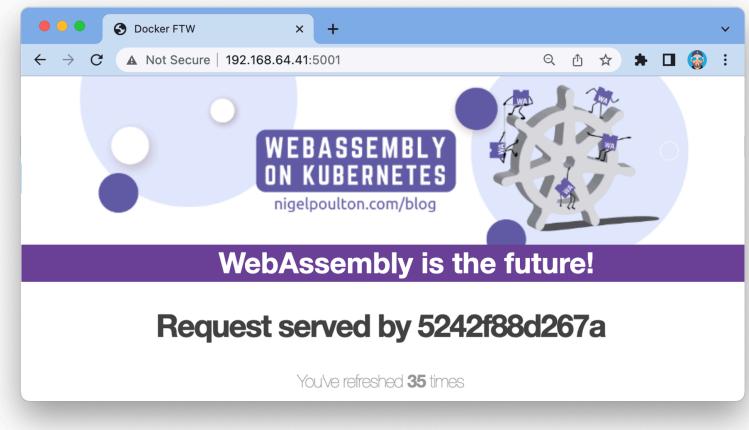


Figure 11.4 - The updated app

The volume will still exist, and you'll need to delete it manually.

Congratulations. You've successfully deployed and managed a multi-container app using Docker Stacks. You also learned to deploy and manage apps declaratively by making all changes via the stack file (Compose file).

Clean up

If you've been following along, you've deployed an app with two services, a network, and a volume.

You can delete the stack with the **docker stack rm** command. However, be warned that it deletes the stack without asking for confirmation.

```
$ docker stack rm ddd
Removing service ddd_redis
Removing service ddd_web-fe
Removing network ddd_counter-net
```

The command deleted the network and services but not the volume. This is because volume lifecycles are decoupled from containers and services, and you need to delete them manually.

Run the following command on every swarm node that hosted a replica.

```
$ docker volume rm ddd_counter-vol
ddd_counter-vol
```

Deploying apps with Docker Stacks – The Commands

- **docker stack deploy** is the command you'll run to deploy **and** update stacks. You need to specify the name of the stack and the stack file. Docker expects the stack file to be called **compose.yaml** by default. **docker stack ls** lists all stacks on a swarm and shows the number of services each one has.
- **docker stack ps** gives you detailed information about a stack. It tells you which nodes replicas are running on, which images they're based on, and shows the *desired state* and *current state* of each service replica.
- **docker stack rm** deletes a stack and doesn't ask for confirmation.

Chapter Summary

Stacks are Docker's native solution for running cloud-native microservices applications on Swarm clusters. They offer a simple declarative interface for managing the entire lifecycle of applications and infrastructure.

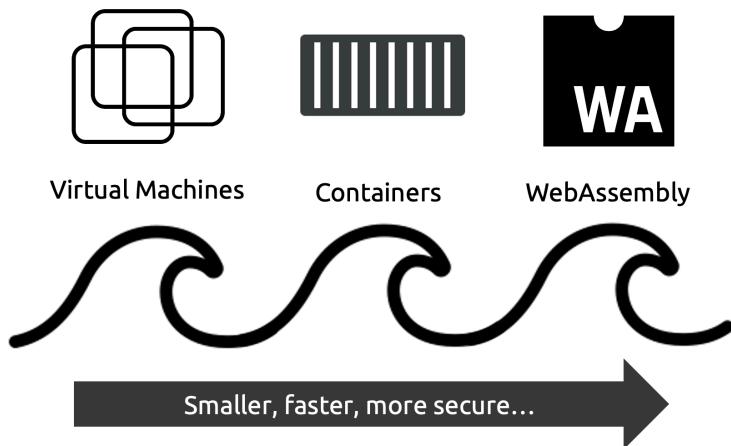
You start with application code and infrastructure requirements — things like networks, ports, volumes, and secrets. You containerize the application and combine all the services and infrastructure definitions into a single declarative stack file. You set the number of replicas, as well as rollout and restart policies. Then, you use the **docker stack deploy** command to deploy the application from the stack file.

You should also perform all updates declaratively by updating the stack file and redeploying the app.

12: Docker and WebAssembly

WebAssembly is driving the third of cloud computing, and Docker is evolving to take advantage.

We built the first wave on virtual machines (VMs), the second on containers, and we're building the third on WebAssembly. Each wave is driving smaller, faster, and more secure workloads, and all three will work together in the future of cloud computing.



In this chapter, you'll write a simple WebAssembly application and use Docker to containerize and run it in a container. The goal is to introduce you to WebAssembly and show you how easy it is to work with Docker and WebAssembly together.

The terms *WebAssembly* and *Wasm* mean the same thing, and we'll use the term Wasm.

I've divided the chapter as follows:

- Pre-reqs
- Intro to Wasm
- Write a Wasm app
- Containerize a Wasm app
- Deploy a Wasm app

Pre-reqs

You'll need all of the following if you plan on following along:

- Docker Desktop **4.30+** with Wasm enabled
- Rust 1.72+ with the Wasm target installed
- Spin 2.5+

At the time of writing, support for Wasm is a beta feature in Docker Desktop and doesn't work with Multipass Docker VMs. This may change in the future. It also means there's a higher risk of bugs. I've tested the examples in this chapter on Docker Desktop 4.30.0.

Configure Docker Desktop for Wasm

Open the Docker Desktop UI, click the Settings icon at the top right, and make sure **Use containerd for pulling and storing images** is selected. Next, click the **Features in development** tab, select the **Enable Wasm** option and click the blue **Apply & restart** button.

Some of the settings are shown in Figure 12.2.

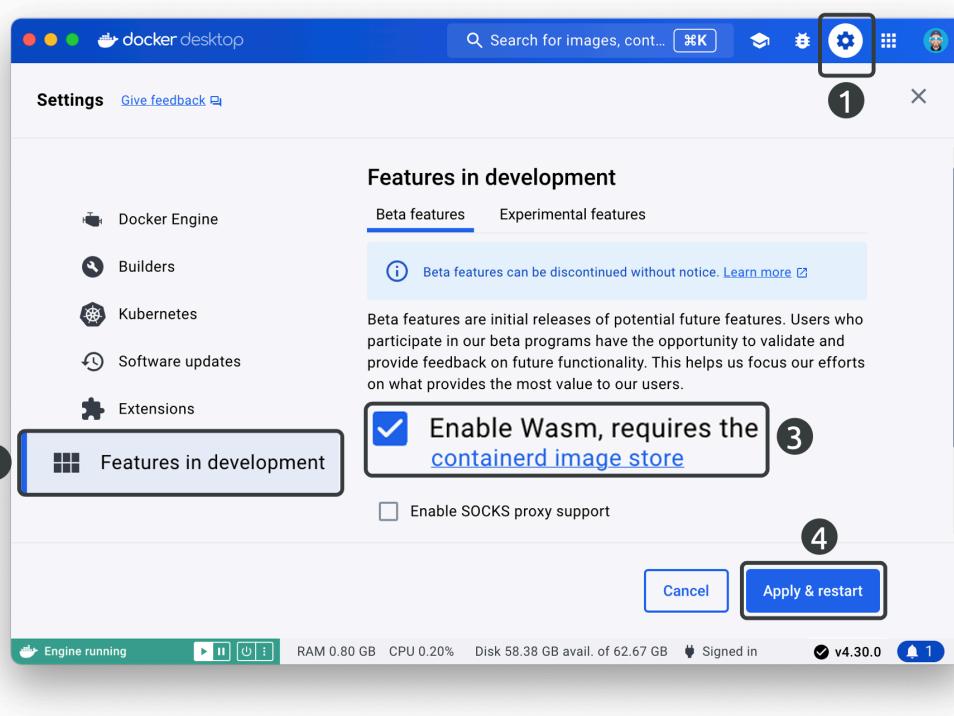


Figure 12.2. Docker Desktop Wasm settings

Install Rust and configure for Wasm

Search the web for *how to install Rust* and follow the instructions for your platform. Once you've installed Rust, run the following command to install the **wasm32-wasi** target so that Rust can compile to Wasm.

```
$ rustup target add wasm32-wasi
info: downloading component 'rust-std' for 'wasm32-wasi'
info: installing component 'rust-std' for 'wasm32-wasi'
```

Install Spin

Spin is a Wasm framework and runtime that makes building and running Wasm apps easy.

Search the web for *how to install Fermyon spin* and follow the instructions for your system.

Run the following command to ensure it's installed correctly.

```
$ spin --version  
spin 2.5.0 (83eb68d 2024-05-08)
```

You're now ready to build and run Wasm apps on your local machine.

Intro to Wasm and Wasm containers

Wasm is a new type of application that is smaller, faster, and more portable than traditional Linux containers. However, traditional Linux containers can do a lot more than Wasm apps. For example, Wasm apps are currently great for AI workloads, serverless functions, plugins, and edge devices but not so good for complex networking or heavy I/O.

However, Wasm is evolving fast and may become better at other workloads in the future.

Digging a little deeper...

As we're about to see, Wasm is a new virtual machine architecture that programming languages compile to. So, instead of compiling apps to *Linux on ARM* or *Linux on AMD*, you compile them to *Wasm*. You can then run these Wasm apps on any system with a *Wasm runtime*. Fortunately, Docker Desktop already ships with several Wasm runtimes.

Run the following command to see the list of Wasm runtimes installed as part of your Docker Desktop environment. The first time you run the command, it will download the image.

```
$ docker run --rm -i --privileged --pid=host jorgeprendes420/docker-desktop-shim-manager:latest  
io.containerd.wasmtime.v1  
io.containerd.spin.v2  
io.containerd.wws.v1  
io.containerd.lunatic.v1  
io.containerd.slight.v1  
io.containerd.wasmedge.v1  
io.containerd.wasmer.v1
```

My installation has seven Wasm runtimes, including the **io.containerd.spin.v2** runtime we'll use in the examples.

These Wasm runtimes allow **containerd** to deploy and manage *Wasm containers*. A *Wasm container* is a Wasm binary running inside a minimal *scratch container* so that you can build, ship, and run them with familiar Docker tools such as the **docker run** command and Docker Hub.

Talk is cheap though, let's see it in action.

Write a Wasm app

We'll use **spin** to create a simple web server that we'll compile as a Wasm app. In future steps, you'll build, ship, and run the app as a Wasm container.

Change into a new directory and then run the following command to create a new Wasm app called *hello-world*. Respond to the prompts as shown in the example.

```
$ spin new hello-world -t http-rust
Description: Wasm app
HTTP path: /hello
```

The command creates a new **hello-world** directory and scaffolds a simple Rust-based web app. Change into this directory and inspect the app files. If you don't have the **tree** command, you can run an **ls -l** for similar results.

```
$ cd hello-world
$ tree
.
├── Cargo.toml
├── spin.toml
└── src
    └── lib.rs
```

We're only interested in the **spin.toml** and **src/lib.rs** files.

Edit the **src/lib.rs** file and change the text inside the double quotes as shown in the following snippet. This configures the app to display **Docker loves Wasm**.

```
use spin_sdk::http::{IntoResponse, Request};
<Snip>
Ok(http::Response::builder()
    .status(200)
    .header("content-type", "text/plain")
    .body("Docker loves Wasm")?)           <<---- Change text inside quotes
}
```

Once you've saved your changes, run a **spin build** command to compile the app as a Wasm binary.

```
$ spin build
Building component with `cargo build --target wasm32-wasi --release`
<Snip>
Finished building all Spin components
```

If you look at the first line of the output, you'll see it's running a more complex **cargo build** command that compiles the app as a Wasm binary.

Run another **tree** command to see the Wasm binary.

```
$ tree
<Snip>
└── target
    └── wasm32-wasi
        └── release
            └── hello_world.wasm
```

The output is much longer this time, and I've trimmed the example in the book so you only see the **hello_world.wasm** binary. This is the Wasm app and will run on any system with the **spin** Wasm runtime.

You'll containerize the app in the next section, but you should test it works before proceeding.

Run a **spin up** command to start a local instance of the app. This will start the app using the local **spin** runtime you installed earlier.

```
$ spin up
Logging component stdio to ".spin/logs/"

Serving http://127.0.0.1:3000
Available Routes:
  hello-world: http://127.0.0.1:3000/hello
```

Point your browser to <http://127.0.0.1:3000/hello> and make sure the app works.



Figure 12.3. Wasm app running locally

Congratulations. You just built a simple web server, compiled it to Wasm, and executed it locally using **spin!** In the next section, you'll containerize it.

Press **Ctrl-C** to kill the app.

Containerize a Wasm app

Docker Desktop lets you containerize Wasm apps so you can use familiar Docker tools to push and pull them to OCI registries and run them inside containers.

As always, you need a Dockerfile that tells Docker how to package the app as an image. Create a new file called **Dockerfile** in your current directory and populate it with the following three lines.

```
FROM scratch
COPY /target/wasm32-wasi/release/hello_world.wasm .
COPY spin.toml .
```

The file references a special empty base image called *scratch* because Wasm containers don't need a Linux OS.

The two **COPY** instructions copy the **hello_world.wasm** Wasm app and the **spin.toml** file into the image.

If you look closely, you'll see that the **spin.toml** file expects the Wasm app to be in the **target/wasm32-wasi/release/** directory. However, the second **COPY** instruction places

it in the root folder. This means we'll need to update the **spin.toml** file so it knows where to find the app after it's copied into the root of the image.

Edit the **spin.toml** file and remove the leading path for the **source** line as shown.

```
<Snip>
[component.hello-world]
source = "hello_world.wasm"           <---- Remove any leading directories so it looks like this
<Snip>
```

Save your changes.

Run the following command to containerize the Wasm app. Be sure to tag the image with your own Docker Hub username instead of mine.

```
$ docker build \
--platform wasi/wasm \
--provenance=false \
-t nigelpoulton/ddd-book:wasm .
```

The **--platform wasi/wasm** flag sets the image as a Wasm image.

Some older versions of Docker have an older builder and will fail. If this happens, try running the same command, but change the first line to **docker buildx build **.

List the images on your system.

```
$ docker images
REPOSITORY          TAG      IMAGE ID      CREATED       SIZE
nigelpoulton/ddd-book    wasm    7b55889f1006   2 minutes ago  620kB
```

See how the Wasm image looks like a regular image, just smaller.

You can push and pull the image to Docker Hub and other OCI registries as normal.

The following command pushes the image to one of my repos in Docker Hub. Be sure to tag the image with your own Docker username.

```
$ docker push nigelpoulton/ddd-book:wasm
The push refers to repository [docker.io/nigelpoulton/ddd-book]
301823195c36: Pushed
8966226af76a: Pushed
wasm: digest: sha256:7b55889f1006285ed6c394dcc7a56aca8955c107587b2216340e592299b8ae4c size: 695
```

If you look at Docker Hub, you can see Docker Hub has recognized it as a **wasi/wasm** image. You'll also see there's no vulnerability analysis data. This is because image scanning tools can't analyze Wasm images yet.

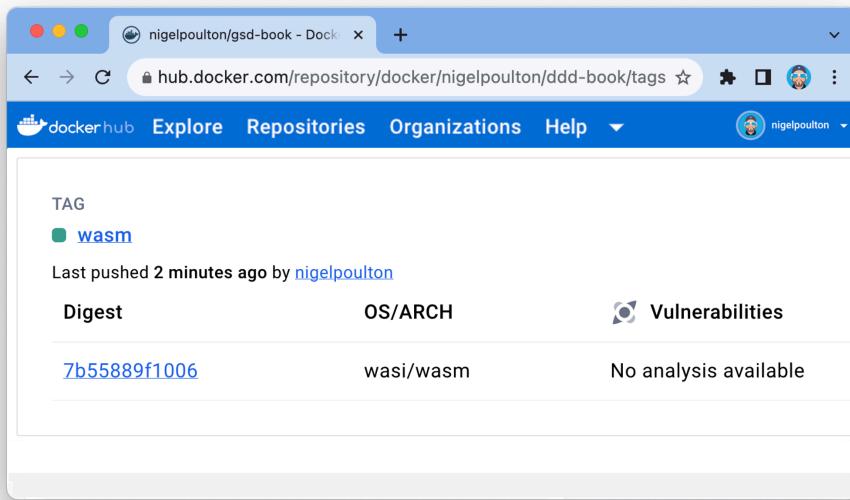


Figure 12.4. Wasm image on Docker Hub

Run a Wasm container

Now that you've packaged the Wasm app as an OCI image and pushed it to a registry, you can run it as a container.

The following command runs it in a new container called **wasm-ctr** and maps it to port 5556 on your Docker host. The **--runtime** flag makes sure Docker executes the container with the **spin** Wasm runtime. Versions of Docker Desktop older than 4.24 may not have the **spin** runtime and will fail.

```
$ docker run -d --name wasm-ctr \
--runtime=io.containerd.spin.v2 \
--platform=wasi/wasm \
-p 5556:80 \
nigelpoulton/ddd-book:wasm /
```

You can check it's running with a regular **docker ps** command.

Connect your browser to <http://localhost:5556/hello> to see the app.

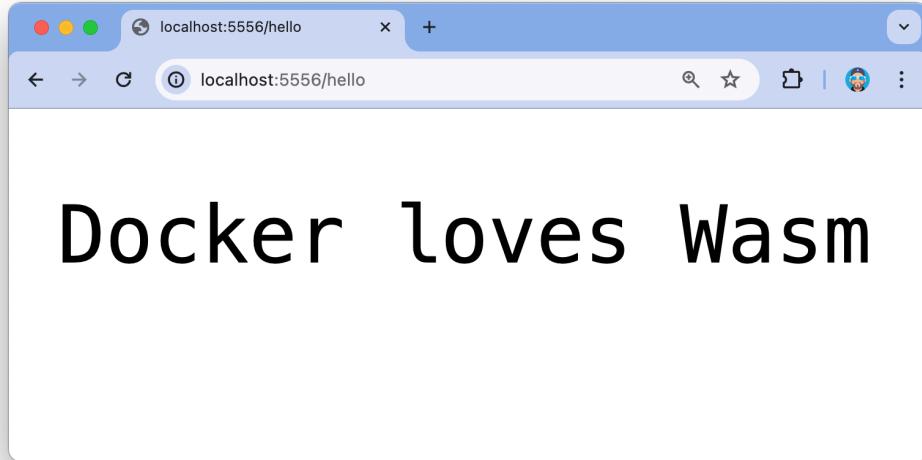


Figure 12.5. Wasm app running in container

Congratulations, your Wasm app is running inside a Wasm container.

Clean up

Run the following commands to delete the container and the local image.

```
$ docker rm wasm-ctr -f  
wasm-ctr  
  
$ docker rmi nigelpoulton/ddd-book:wasm  
Untagged: nigelpoulton/ddd-book:wasm  
Deleted: sha256:7b55889f1006285ed6c394dcc7a56aca8955c107587b2216340e592299b8ae4c
```

You'll still have a copy of the image on Docker Hub and the spin app in your local filesystem. Feel free to delete these as well.

Chapter summary

In this chapter, you containerized a Wasm app and ran it in a Wasm container.

Wasm is a new technology driving the next wave of cloud computing. Wasm apps are smaller, faster, more secure, and more portable than traditional Linux containers. However, they're not as flexible. For example, at the time of writing, Wasm apps aren't great for apps with heavy I/O requirements or complex networking. This will change quickly as the Wasm ecosystem is evolving fast.

Fortunately, Docker already works with Wasm, and Docker Desktop ships with lots of popular Wasm runtimes. This means you can use industry-standard tools such as **docker build** and **docker run** to containerize and run Wasm apps. You can even push them to OCI registries such as Docker Hub.

13: Docker Networking

It's always the network!

Any time we experience infrastructure issues, we always blame the network. One of the reasons we do this is that networks are at the center of everything. With this in mind, it's important you have a strong understanding of Docker networking.

In the early days of Docker, networking was hard. Fortunately, these days it's almost a pleasure ;-)

This chapter will get you up to speed with the fundamentals of Docker networking. You'll learn all the theory behind the *Container Network Model* (CNM) and *libnetwork*, and you'll get your hands dirty with lots of examples. You'll learn about overlay networks in the next chapter.

I've divided the chapter into the following sections:

- Docker networking – the TLDR
- Docker networking theory
- Single-host bridge networks
- External access via port mappings
- Connecting to existing networks and VLANs
- Service Discovery
- Ingress load balancing

A few quick things before we start.

Everything we'll cover relates to Linux containers, and I recommend you follow along using something like Multipass or Play with Docker, as they give you easy access to some of the Linux commands we'll use. I don't recommend following along on Docker Desktop as it runs everything inside a Linux VM and you won't have access to the Linux commands.

Some of the examples explain how networking works on a swarm. You'll only be able to follow these if you're following along with a Swarm cluster.

Docker Networking – The TLDR

Docker runs microservices applications comprised of many containers that work together to form the overall app. These containers need to be able to communicate, and some will have to connect with external services, such as physical servers, virtual machines, or something else.

Fortunately, Docker has solutions for both of these requirements.

Docker networking is based on *libnetwork*, which is the reference implementation of an open-source architecture called the *Container Network Model (CNM)*.

For a smooth out-of-the-box experience, Docker ships with everything you need for the most common networking requirements, including multi-host container-to-container networks and options for plugging into existing VLANs. However, the model is pluggable, and the ecosystem can extend Docker's networking capabilities via drivers that plug into libnetwork.

Last but not least, libnetwork also provides native service discovery and basic load balancing.

That's the big picture. Let's get into the detail.

Docker networking theory

At the highest level, Docker networking is based on the following three components:

- The Container Network Model (CNM)
- Libnetwork
- Drivers

The CNM is the design specification and outlines the fundamental building blocks of a Docker network.

Libnetwork is a real-world implementation of the CNM. It's open-sourced as part of the [Moby project¹⁸](#) and used by Docker and other platforms.

Drivers extend the model by implementing specific network topologies such as VXLAN overlay networks.

Figure 13.1 shows all three.

¹⁸<https://mobyproject.org/>

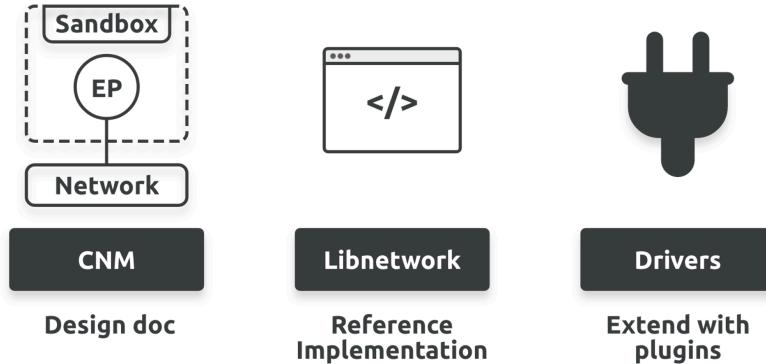


Figure 13.1

Let's take a closer look at each.

The Container Network Model (CNM)

Everything starts with a design.

The design guide for Docker networking is the CNM that outlines the fundamental building blocks of a Docker network.

I recommend you read the [specification document¹⁹](#), but at a high level, it defines three building blocks:

- Sandboxes
- Endpoints
- Networks

A *sandbox* is an isolated network stack inside a container. It includes Ethernet interfaces, ports, routing tables, DNS configuration, and everything else you'd expect from a network stack.

Endpoints are virtual network interfaces that look, smell, and feel like regular network interfaces. They connect sandboxes to networks.

Networks are virtual switches (usually software implementations of an 802.1d bridge). As such, they group together and isolate one or more endpoints that need to communicate.

Figure 13.2 shows how all three connect and relate to familiar infrastructure components. Using CNM terminology, *endpoints* connect *sandboxes* to *networks*. Every container you create will have a sandbox with at least one endpoint connecting it to a network.

¹⁹<https://github.com/moby/moby/blob/master/libnetwork/docs/design.md>

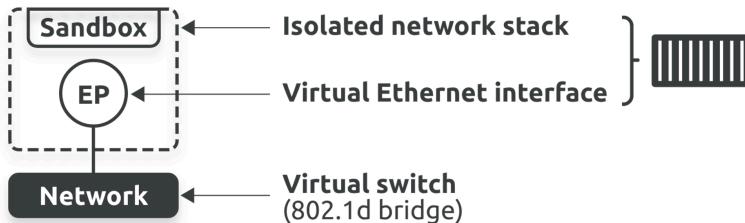


Figure 13.2 The Container Network Model (CNM)

As the name suggests, the **Container Network Model** is all about providing networking for containers. Figure 13.3 shows how CNM components relate to containers — each container gets its own *sandbox* which hosts the container's entire network stack, including one or more endpoints that act as Ethernet interfaces and can be connected to networks.

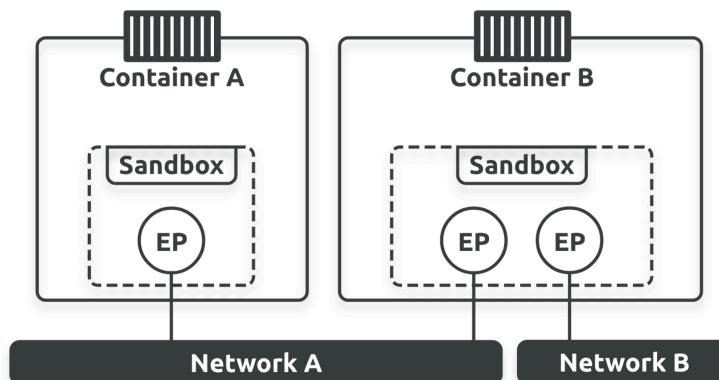


Figure 13.3

Container A has a single interface (endpoint) and is only connected to **Network A**. However, **Container B** has two interfaces connected to **Network A** and **Network B**. The containers can communicate with each other because they are both connected to **Network A**. However, the two endpoints inside of **Container B** cannot communicate with each other as they're on different networks.

It's also important to understand that endpoints behave exactly like regular network adapters, meaning you can only connect them to a single network. This is why **Container B** needs two endpoints if it wants to connect to both networks.

Figure 13.4 extends the diagram further by adding the Docker host. Even though both containers are running on the same host this time, their network stacks are completely isolated and can only communicate via a network.

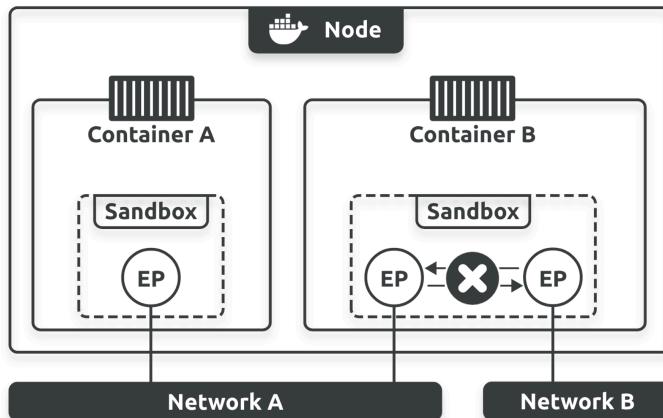


Figure 13.4

Libnetwork

Libnetwork is the reference implementation of the CNM. It's open-source, cross-platform (Linux and Windows), maintained by the Moby project, and used by Docker.

Before Docker created libnetwork, it implemented all of its networking code inside the daemon. However, over time, the daemon became bloated and difficult for other projects to use. As a result, Docker removed the networking code from the daemon and refactored it as an external library called *libnetwork* based on the CNM design. Today, Docker implements all of its core networking in libnetwork.

As well as implementing the core components of the CNM, libnetwork also implements the network control plane, including management APIs, service discovery, and ingress-based container load balancing.

Drivers

Libnetwork implements the control plane, but it relies on drivers to implement the data plane. For example, drivers are responsible for creating networks and ensuring isolation and connectivity.

Docker ships with several built-in drivers that we sometimes call *native drivers* or *local drivers*. These include **bridge**, **overlay**, and **macvlan**, and they build the most common network topologies. Third parties can also write network drivers to implement other network topologies and more advanced configurations.

Figure 13.5 shows the roles of libnetwork and drivers and how they relate to control plane and data place responsibilities.

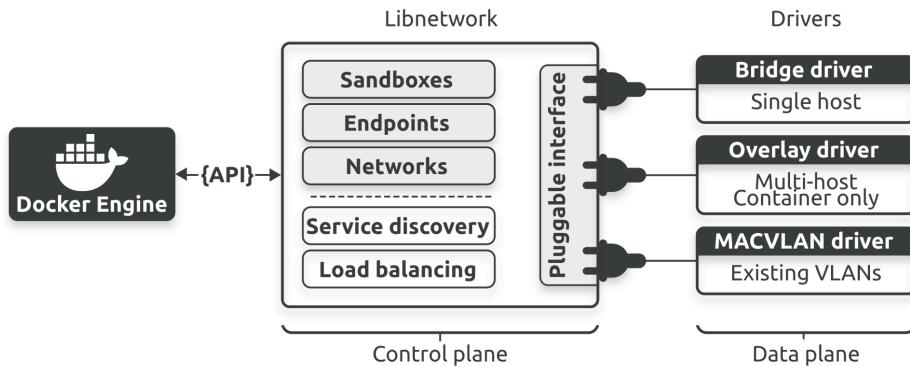


Figure 13.5

Every network you create is owned by a driver, and the driver creates and manages everything about the network. For example, if you create an overlay network called `prod-fe-cuda`, Docker will invoke the overlay driver to create the network and its resources.

To meet the demands of complex, highly fluid environments, a single Docker host or Swarm cluster can have multiple heterogeneous networks managed by different drivers.

Let's look at single-host bridge networks and connecting to existing networks. You'll learn about overlay networks in the next chapter.

Single-host bridge networks

The simplest type of Docker network is the *single-host bridge network*.

The name tells us two things:

- **Single-host** tells us the network only spans a single Docker host
- **Bridge** tells us that it's an implementation of an 802.1d bridge (layer 2 switch)

Docker creates single-host bridge networks with the built-in **bridge** driver. If you run *Windows containers* you'll need to use the **nat** driver, but for all intents and purposes they work the same.

Figure 13.6 shows two Docker hosts with identical local bridge networks, both called **mynet**. Even though the networks are identical, they are independent and isolated,

meaning the containers in the picture cannot communicate, even if the nodes are part of the same swarm.

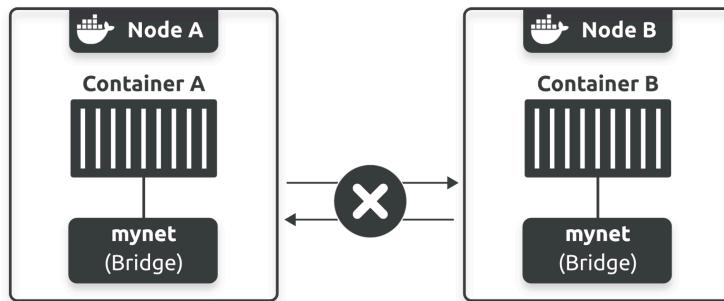


Figure 13.6

Every new Docker host gets a default single-host bridge network called **bridge** that Docker connects new containers to unless you override it with the **--network** flag.

The following commands show the output of a **docker network ls** command on Docker installation.

```
$ docker network ls
NETWORK ID      NAME      DRIVER      SCOPE
c7464dce29ce   bridge    bridge      local      <----- Default on all Docker hosts
c65ab18d0580   host      host       local
42a783df0fbe   none      null      local
```

As always, you can run **docker inspect** commands to get more information. I highly recommend running the command on your own system and studying the output.

```
$ docker network inspect bridge
[
  {
    "Name": "bridge",
    "Id": "c7464dce2...ba2e3b8",
    "Scope": "local",
    "Driver": "bridge",
    "EnableIPv6": false,
    "IPAM": {
      "Driver": "default",
      "Options": null,
      "Config": [
        {
          "Subnet": "172.17.0.0/16",
          "Gateway": "172.17.0.1"
        }
      ]
    }
  }
```

```

        ],
    },
    "Internal": false,
    "Attachable": false,
    "Ingress": false,
    "ConfigFrom": {
        "Network": ""
    },
    <Snip>
}
]

```

All bridge networks are based on the battle-hardened *Linux bridge* technology that has existed in the Linux kernel for over 20 years. This means they're high-performance and highly stable. It also means you can inspect them using standard Linux utilities.

The default *bridge* network on all Linux-based Docker hosts is called **bridge** and maps to an underlying *Linux bridge* in the host's kernel called **docker0**. This is shown in Figure 13.7.

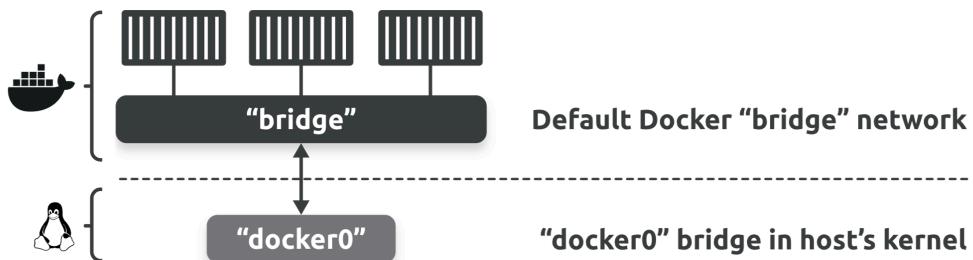


Figure 13.7 - Mapping the default Docker “bridge” network to the “docker0” bridge in the host’s kernel

You can run a `docker network inspect` command to confirm that the **bridge** network is based on the **docker0** bridge in the host's kernel. If you're on Windows using PowerShell, you'll need to replace `~grep** with **SelectString'`.

```
$ docker network inspect bridge | grep bridge.name
"com.docker.network.bridge.name": "docker0",
```

Now run these Linux commands to inspect the **docker 0** bridge from the Linux host. You might need to manually install the **brctl** utility.

```
$ brctl show
bridge name      bridge id      STP enabled     interfaces
docker0          8000.0242aff9eb4f  no
docker_gwbridge  8000.02427abba76b  no

$ ip link show docker0
3: docker0: <BROADCAST,MULTICAST,UP,LOWER_UP> mtu 1500 qdisc...
    link/ether 02:42:af:f9:eb:4f brd ff:ff:ff:ff:ff:ff
```

The first command lists all the *bridges* on your Docker host and shows if they have any devices connected to them. The example in the book shows the **docker0** bridge with no devices connected in the **interfaces** column. You'll only see the **docker_gwbridge** if your host is a member of a swarm cluster.

The second command shows the configuration and state of the **docker0** bridge.

Figure 13.8 shows the complete stack with containers connecting to the **bridge** network, which, in turn, maps to the **docker0** Linux bridge in the host's kernel. It also shows how you can use port mappings to publish connected devices on the Docker host's interface. More on port mappings later.

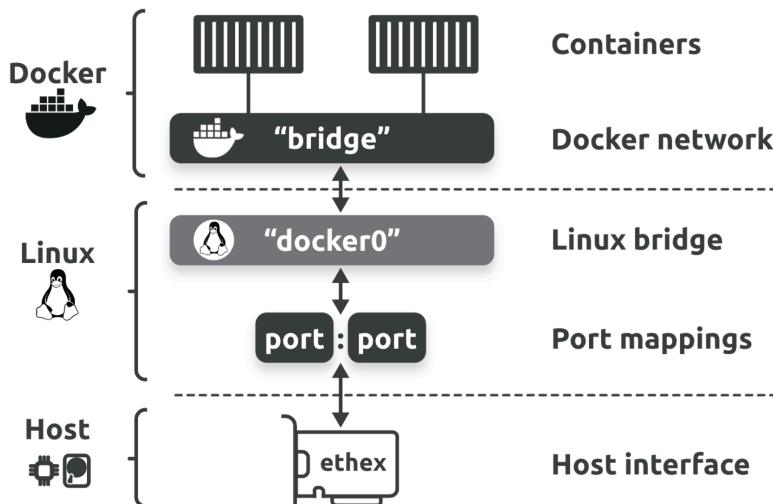


Figure 13.8

In the next few steps, you'll complete all of the following:

1. Create a new Docker bridge network
2. Connect a container to the new network

3. Inspect the new network
4. Test name-based discovery

Run the following command to create a new single-host bridge network called **localnet**.

```
$ docker network create -d bridge localnet
f918f1bb0602373bf949615d99cb2bbbef14ede935fbb2ff8e83c74f10e4b986
```

The long number returned by the command is the network's ID and you'll need it in the next step.

As expected, the command creates a new Docker bridge network called **localnet** that you can list and inspect with the usual **docker** commands. However, behind the scenes, it also creates a new Linux bridge in the host's kernel.

Run another **brctl show** command to see it.

```
$ brctl show
bridge name      bridge id          STP enabled      interfaces
br-f918f1bb0602  8000.0242372a886b  no
docker0           8000.024258ee84bc  no
docker_gwbridge   8000.02427abba76b  no
```

The example in the book shows a new bridge called **br-f918f1bb0602** with no devices connected. If you look closely at the name, you'll recognize **f918f1bb0602** as the first 12 characters from the ID of the new **localnet** network you just created.

At this point, the bridge configuration on the host looks like Figure 13.9, with three Docker networks and three associated bridges in the host's kernel.



Figure 13.9

Let's create a new container called **c1** and attach it to the new **localnet** bridge network.

```
$ docker run -d --name c1 \
--network localnet \
alpine sleep 1d
```

Once you've created the container, inspect the **localnet** network and verify the container is connected to it. You'll need the **jq** utility installed for the command to work. Leave off the "**| jq**" if it doesn't work.

```
$ docker network inspect localnet --format '{{json .Containers}}' | jq
{
  "09c5f4926c87da12039b3b510a5950b3fe9db80e13431dc17d870450a45fd84a": {
    "Name": "c1",
    "EndpointID": "27770ac305773b352d716690fb9f8e05c1b71e10dc66f67b88e93cb923ab9749",
    "MacAddress": "02:42:ac:15:00:02",
    "IPv4Address": "172.21.0.2/16",
    "IPv6Address": ""
  }
}
```

The output shows the **c1** container and its IP address. This proves Docker connected it to the network.

If you run another **brctl show** command, you'll see the **c1** container's interface connected to the **br-1597657726bc** bridge.

```
$ brctl show
bridge name      bridge id      STP enabled      interfaces
br-f918f1bb0602  8000.0242372a886b  no           veth833aaf9
docker0          8000.024258ee84bc  no
docker_gwbridge   8000.02427abba76b  no
```

Figure 13.10 shows the updated configuration. Your veth IDs will be different, but the important thing to understand is that every veth is like a cable with an interface on either end. One end is connected to the Docker network, and the other end is connected to the associated bridge in the kernel.

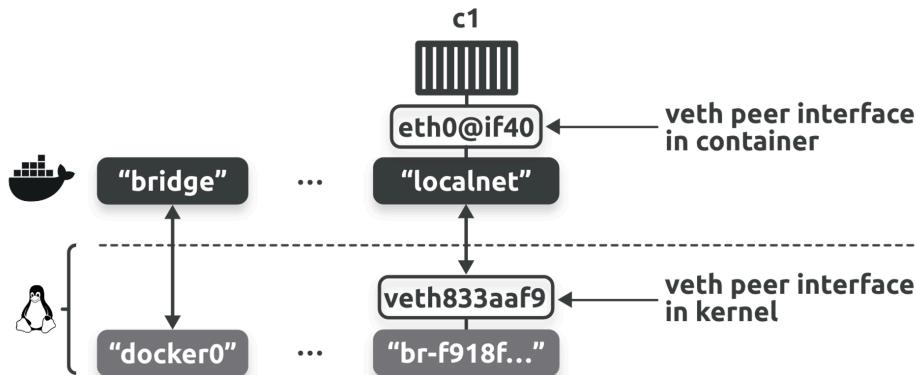


Figure 13.10

If you add more containers to the **localnet** network, they'll all be able to communicate using names. This is because Docker automatically registers container names with an internal DNS service and allows containers on the same network to find each other by name. The exception to this rule is the built-in **bridge** network that does not support DNS resolution.

Let's test name resolution by creating a new container called **c2** on the same **localnet** network and seeing if it can ping the **c1** container.

Run the following command to create the **c2** container on the **localnet** network. You'll need to type **exit** if you're still logged in to the **c1** container.

```
$ docker run -it --name c2 \
--network localnet \
alpine sh
```

Your terminal will switch into the **c2** container.

Try to ping the **c1** container by name.

```
# ping c1
PING c1 (172.21.0.2): 56 data bytes
64 bytes from 172.21.0.2: seq=0 ttl=64 time=1.564 ms
64 bytes from 172.21.0.2: seq=1 ttl=64 time=0.338 ms
64 bytes from 172.21.0.2: seq=2 ttl=64 time=0.248 ms
<Control-c>
```

It works! This is because all containers run a DNS resolver that forwards name lookups to Docker's internal DNS server that holds name-to-IP mappings for all containers started with the **--name** or **--net-alias** flag.

Type **exit** to log out of the container and return to your local shell.

External access via port mappings

So far, we've said that containers on bridge networks can only communicate with other containers on the same network. However, you can get around this by mapping containers to ports on the Docker host. It's a bit clunky and has a lot of limitations, but it might be useful for occasional testing and development work.

Figure 13.11 shows a single Docker host running two containers. The **web** container on the right is running a web server on port 80 that is mapped to port 5005 on the Docker host. The **client** container on the left is sending requests to the Docker host on port 5005 and the external client at the bottom is doing the same. Both requests will hit the host's IP on port 5005 and be redirected to the web server running in the **web** container.

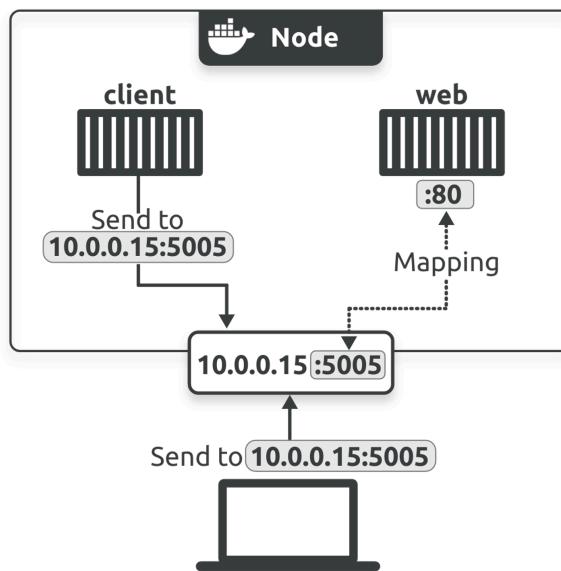


Figure 13.11

Let's test the setup to see if it works.

Create a new container called **web** running NGINX on port 80 and map it to port 5005 on the Docker host. If you're still logged on to the container from the previous example, you'll need to type **exit** first.

```
$ docker run -d --name web \
--network localnet \
--publish 5005:80 \
nginx
```

Verify the port mapping.

```
$ docker port web
80/tcp -> 0.0.0.0:5005
80/tcp -> [::]:5005
```

The output shows the port mapping exists on all interfaces on the Docker host.

You can test external access by pointing a web browser to the Docker host on port 5005. You'll need to know the IP or DNS name of your Docker host (if you're following along on Multipass it will probably be your Multipass VM's 192.168.x.x address). You'll see the *Welcome to nginx!* page.

Let's create another container and see if it can reach the web container via the port mapping.

Run the following command to create a new container called **client** on the **bridge** network.

```
$ docker run -it --name client --network bridge alpine sh
#
```

The command will log you into the container and your prompt will change.

Install the **curl** utility.

```
# apk add curl
fetch https://dl-cdn.alpinelinux.org/alpine/v3.19/main/aarch64/APKINDEX.tar.gz
fetch https://dl-cdn.alpinelinux.org/alpine/v3.19/community/aarch64/APKINDEX.tar.gz
(1/8) Installing ca-certificates (20240226-r0)
<Snip>
```

Now connect to the IP of your Docker host on port 5005 to see if you can reach the container.

```
# curl 192.168.64.69:5005
<!DOCTYPE html>
<html>
<head>
<title>Welcome to nginx!</title>
...
</html>
```

You've reached the NGINX web server running on the **c1** container via a port mapping to the Docker host's IP.

Even though this works, it's clunky and doesn't scale. For example, no other containers or host processes will be able to use port 5005 on the host. This is one of the reasons that single-host bridge networks are only useful for local development or very small applications.

Connecting to existing networks and VLANs

The ability to connect containerized apps to external systems and physical networks is important. A common example is partially containerized apps where the parts running in containers need to be able to communicate with the parts not running in containers.

The built-in **MACVLAN** driver (**transparent** if you're using Windows containers) was created with this in mind. It gives every container its own IP and MAC address on the external physical network, making each one look, smell, and feel like a physical server or VM. This is shown in Figure 13.12.

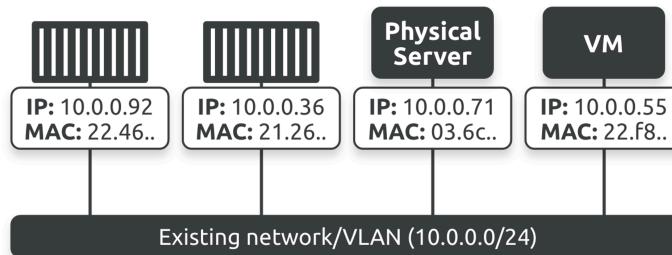


Figure 13.12 - MACVLAN driver making containers visible on external networks

On the positive side, MACVLAN performance is good as it doesn't require port mappings or additional bridges. However, you need to run your host NICs in *promiscuous mode*, which isn't allowed on many corporate networks and public clouds. So, MACVLAN will work on your data center networks **if** your network team allows *promiscuous mode*, but it probably won't work on your public cloud.

Let's dig a bit deeper with the help of some pictures and a hypothetical example. This example will only work if your host NIC is in promiscuous mode on a network that allows it. It also requires an existing VLAN 100. You can adapt it if the VLAN config on your physical network is different. You can follow along without the VLANs, but you won't get the full experience.

Assume you have the network shown in Figure 13.13 with two VLANs:



Figure 13.13

Next, you add a Docker host and connect it to the network.

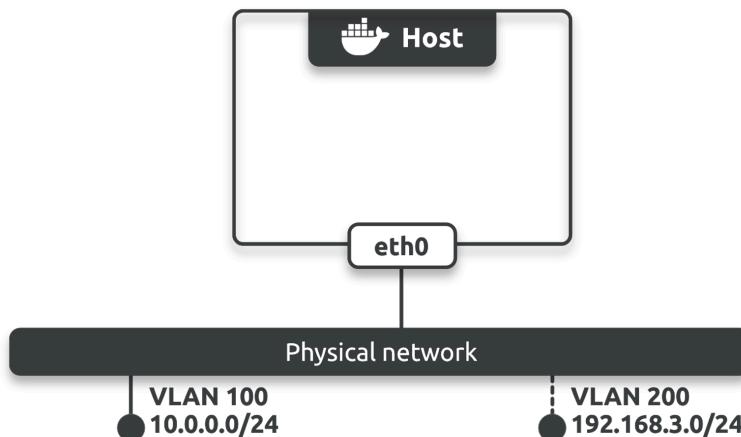


Figure 13.14

Now comes the requirement to attach a container to VLAN 100. To do this, you create a new Docker network with the **macvlan** driver and configure it with all of the following:

- Subnet info
- Gateway
- Range of IPs it can assign to containers
- Which of the host's interfaces or sub-interfaces to use

Run the following command to create a new MACVLAN network called **macvlan100** that will connect containers to VLAN 100. You may need to change the name of the

parent interface to match the parent interface name on your system. For example, changing `-o parent=eth0.100` to `-o parent=enp0s1.100`. The parent interface must be connected to the VLAN, and you'll need to type `exit` if you're still logged on to the container from the previous example.

```
$ docker network create -d macvlan \
--subnet=10.0.0.0/24 \
--ip-range=10.0.0.0/25 \
--gateway=10.0.0.1 \
-o parent=eth0.100 \           <<<---- Make sure this matches your system
macvlan100
```

Docker will create the `macvlan100` network and a new sub-interface on the host called `eth0.100@eth0`. The config now looks like this.

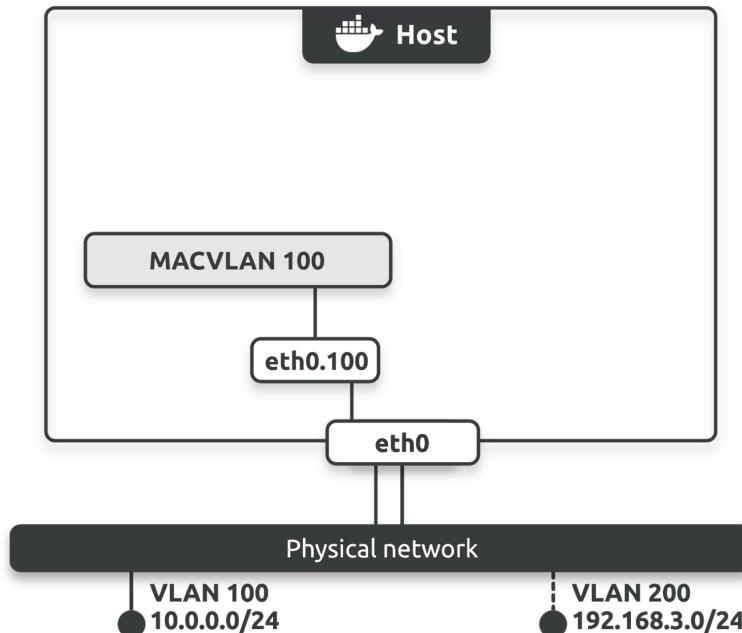


Figure 13.15

The MACVLAN driver creates standard Linux *sub-interfaces* and tags them with the ID of the VLAN they will connect to. In this example, we're connecting to VLAN 100, so we tag the sub-interface with `.100` (`-o parent=eth0.100`).

We also used the `--ip-range` flag to tell the new network which sub-set of IP addresses it can assign to containers. It's vital that you reserve this range of addresses for Docker,

as the MACVLAN driver has no management plane feature to check if IPs are already in use.

If you inspect the network, you'll be able to see the important configuration information. I've snipped the output to show the most relevant parts.

```
$ docker network inspect macvlan100
[
    {
        "Name": "macvlan100",
        "Driver": "macvlan",
        "IPAM": {
            "Config": [
                {
                    "Subnet": "10.0.0.0/24",
                    "IPRange": "10.0.0.0/25",
                    "Gateway": "10.0.0.1"
                }
            ]
        },
        "Options": {
            "parent": "enp0s1.100"
        }
    }
]
```

Once you've created the **macvlan100** network, you can connect containers to it and Docker will assign the IP and MAC addresses on the underlying VLAN so they'll be visible to other systems.

The following command creates a new container called **mactainer1** and connects it to the **macvlan100** network.

```
$ docker run -d --name mactainer1 \
--network macvlan100 \
alpine sleep 1d
```

The config now looks like Figure 13.16.

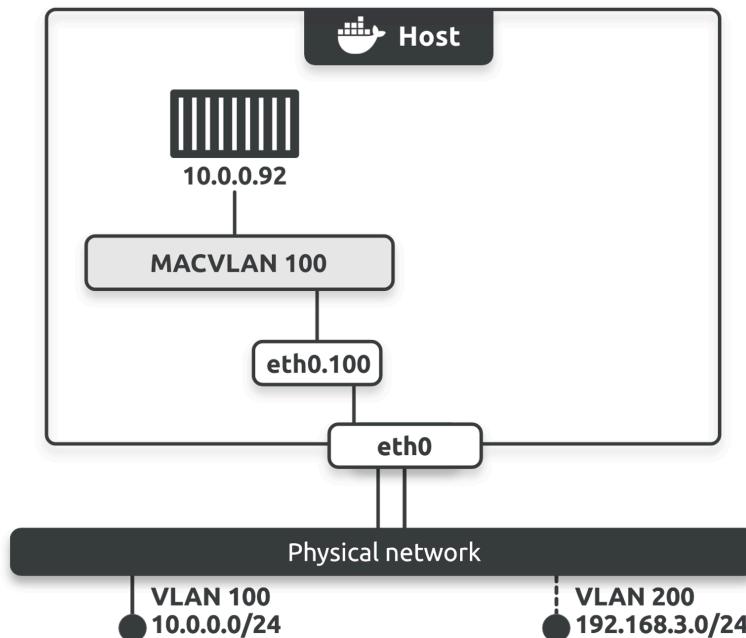


Figure 13.16

However, remember that the underlying network (VLAN 100) does not see any of the MACVLAN magic; it only sees the container with its MAC and IP addresses, meaning the `mactainer1` container will be able to communicate with every other system connected to VLAN 100!

Note: If you can't get this to work, it might be because your host NIC isn't in promiscuous mode. Also, remember that public cloud platforms normally block promiscuous mode.

At this point, you've got a MACVLAN network and used it to connect a new container to an existing VLAN. If you have the complete setup, with the existing VLAN, you can test that the container is reachable from other systems on the VLAN.

However, it doesn't stop there. The Docker MACVLAN driver supports VLAN trunking. This means you can create multiple MACVLAN networks that connect to different VLANs. Figure 13.17 shows a single Docker host running two MACVLAN networks connecting containers to two different VLANs.

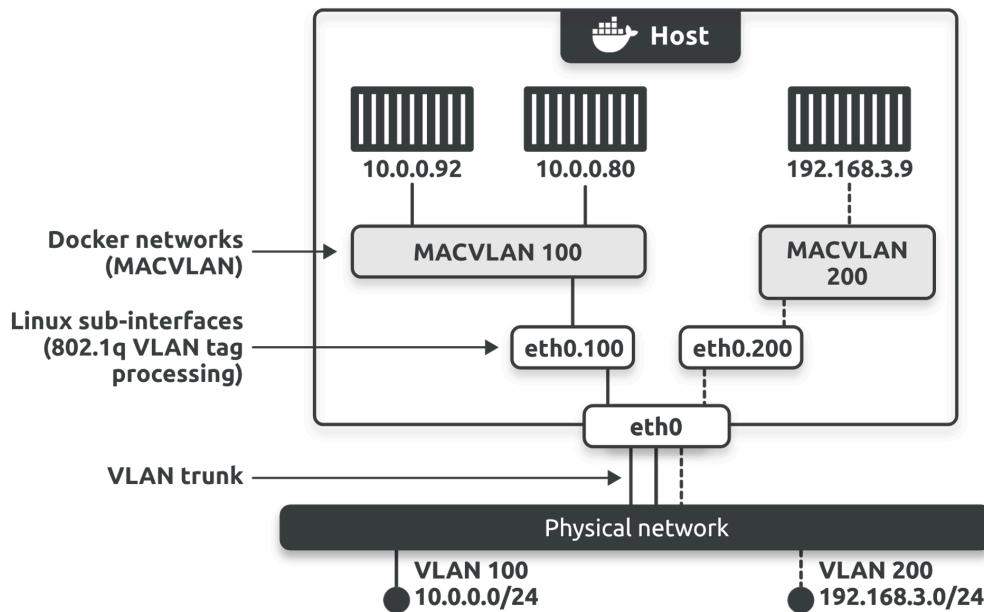


Figure 13.17

Troubleshooting connectivity problems

A quick note on troubleshooting connectivity issues before moving on to service discovery.

Daemon logs and container logs can be useful when troubleshooting connectivity issues.

If you're running Windows containers, you can view them in the Windows Event Viewer or directly in `~\AppData\Local\ Docker`. For Linux containers, it depends on which *init* system you're using. If you're running a systemd, Docker will post logs to `journald` and you can view them with the `journalctl -u docker.service` command. If you're using a different init system, you might want to check the following locations:

- Ubuntu systems running upstart: `/var/log/upstart/docker.log`
- RHEL-based systems: `/var/log/messages`
- Debian: `/var/log/daemon.log`

You can also tell Docker how verbose you want daemon logging to be. To do this, edit the daemon config file at `/etc/docker/daemon.json` and set "**debug**" to "**true**" and "**log-level**" to one of the following:

- **debug** – the most verbose option
- **info** – the default value and second-most verbose option
- **warn** – third most verbose option
- **error** – fourth most verbose option
- **fatal** – least verbose option

The following snippet from a **daemon.json** enables debugging and sets the level to **debug**. It will work on all Docker platforms.

```
{  
  <Snip>  
  "debug":true,  
  "log-level":"debug",  
  <Snip>  
}
```

If your **daemon.json** file doesn't exist, create it. Also, be sure to restart Docker after making any changes to the file.

That was the daemon logs. What about container logs?

You can normally view container logs with the **docker logs** command. If you're running Swarm, you should use the **docker service logs** command. However, Docker supports a few different log drivers, and they don't all work with native Docker commands. For some of them, you might have to view logs using the platform's native tools.

json-file and **journald** are probably the easiest to configure and they both work with the **docker logs** and **docker service logs** commands.

The following snippet from a **daemon.json** shows a Docker host configured to use **journald**.

```
{  
  "log-driver": "journald"  
}
```

You can also start a container or a service with the **--log-driver** and **--log-opt**s flags to override the settings in **daemon.json**.

Container logs work on the premise that your application runs as PID 1 and sends logs to **STDOUT** and errors to **STDERR**. The logging driver then forwards everything to the locations configured via the logging driver.

The following is an example of running the **docker logs** command against a container called **vantage-db** that is configured with the **json-file** logging driver.

```
$ docker logs vantage-db
1:C 2 Feb 09:53:22.903 # o000o000o000o Redis is starting o000o000o000o
1:C 2 Feb 09:53:22.904 # Redis version=4.0.6, bits=64, commit=00000000, modified=0, pid=1
1:C 2 Feb 09:53:22.904 # Warning: no config file specified, using the default config.
1:M 2 Feb 09:53:22.906 * Running mode=standalone, port=6379.
1:M 2 Feb 09:53:22.906 # WARNING: The TCP backlog setting of 511 cannot be enforced...
1:M 2 Feb 09:53:22.906 # Server initialized
1:M 2 Feb 09:53:22.906 # WARNING overcommit_memory is set to 0!
```

There's a good chance you'll find network connectivity errors in the daemon logs or container logs.

Service discovery

As well as core networking, *libnetwork* also provides *service discovery* that allows all containers and Swarm services to locate each other by name. The only requirement is that the containers be on the same network.

Under the hood, Docker implements a native DNS server and configures every container to use it for name resolution.

Figure 13.18 shows a container called **c1** pinging another container called **c2** by name. The same principle applies to Swarm service replicas.

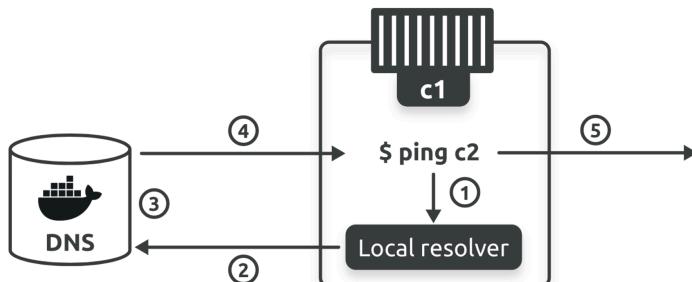


Figure 13.18

Let's step through the process.

- **Step 1:** The **c1** container issues a **ping c2** command. The container's local DNS resolver checks its cache to see if it has an IP address for **c2**. All Docker containers have a local DNS resolver.
- **Step 2:** The local resolver doesn't have an IP address for **c2**, so it initiates a recursive query to the embedded Docker DNS server. All Docker containers are pre-configured to know how to send queries to the embedded DNS server.

- **Step 3:** The Docker DNS server maintains name-to-IP mappings for every container you create with the **--name** or **--net-alias** flags. This means it knows the IP address of the **c2** container.
- **Step 4:** The DNS server returns the IP address of the **c2** container to the local resolver in the **c1** container. If **c1** and **c2** are on different Docker networks it won't return the IP address — name resolution only works for containers on the same network.
- **Step 5:** The **c1** container sends the ping request (ICMP echo request) to the IP address of **c2**.

Just to confirm a few points.

Docker will automatically register the name and IP of every container you create with the **--name** or **net-alias** flag with the embedded Docker DNS service. It also automatically configures every container to use the embedded DNS service to convert names to IPs. And name resolution (service discovery) is *network scoped*, meaning it only works for containers and services on the same network.

One last point on service discovery and name resolution...

You can use the **--dns** flag to start containers and services with a customized list of DNS servers, and you can use the **--dns-search** flag to add custom search domains for queries against unqualified names (i.e., when the application doesn't specify fully qualified DNS names for services they consume). You'll find both of these useful if your applications query names outside of your Docker environment such as internet services.

Both of these options work by adding entries to the container's **/etc/resolv.conf** file.

Run the following command to start a new container with the infamous 8.8.8.8 Google DNS server and `nigelpoulton.com` as a search domain for unqualified queries.

```
$ docker run -it --name custom-dns \
--dns=8.8.8.8 \
--dns-search=nigelpoulton.com \
alpine sh
```

Your shell prompt will change to indicate you're connected to the container.

Inspect its **/etc/resolv.conf** file.

```
# cat /etc/resolv.conf
Generated by Docker Engine.
This file can be edited; Docker Engine will not make further changes once it
has been modified.

nameserver 8.8.8.8
search nigelpoulton.com
```

The file's contents might be slightly different if you connect the container to a custom network, but the options work the same.

Type **exit** to return to your local terminal.

Ingress load balancing

This section only applies to Docker Swarm.

Swarm supports two ways of publishing services to external clients:

- Ingress mode (default)
- Host mode

External clients can access *ingress mode* services via any swarm node — even nodes not hosting a service replica. However, they can only access *host mode* services via nodes running replicas. Figure 13.19 shows both modes.

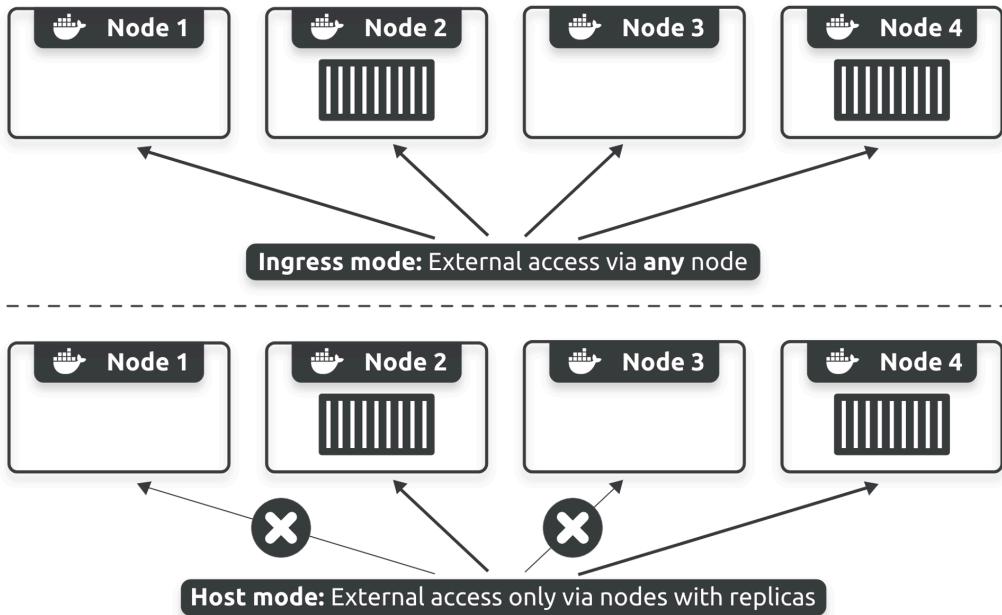


Figure 13.19

Ingress mode is the default, meaning any time you create a service with `-p` or `--publish`, Docker will publish it in *ingress mode*. If you want to publish a service in *host mode*, you'll need to use the `--publish` flag with the `mode=host` option. The following example publishes a service in host mode and will only work on a swarm.

```
$ docker service create -d --name svc1 \
--publish published=5005,target=80,mode=host \
nginx
```

A few notes about the command. `docker service create` lets you publish services using either *long form syntax* or *short form syntax*.

The short form looks like `-p 5005:80` and you've seen it a few times already. However, you cannot publish a service in *host mode* using the short form.

Long form looks like this: `--publish published=5005,target=80,mode=host`. It's a comma-separated list with no whitespace after the commands, and the options work as follows:

- `published=5005` makes the service available to external clients via port 5005
- `target=80` makes sure requests hitting the *published* port get mapped back to port 80 on service replicas

- **mode=host** makes sure requests will only reach the service if they arrive on nodes running a service replica

You'll almost always use ingress mode.

Behind the scenes, ingress mode uses a layer 4 routing mesh that Docker calls the **service mesh** or the **swarm-mode service mesh**. Figure 13.20 shows the basic traffic flow when an external request hits the cluster for a service exposed in ingress mode.

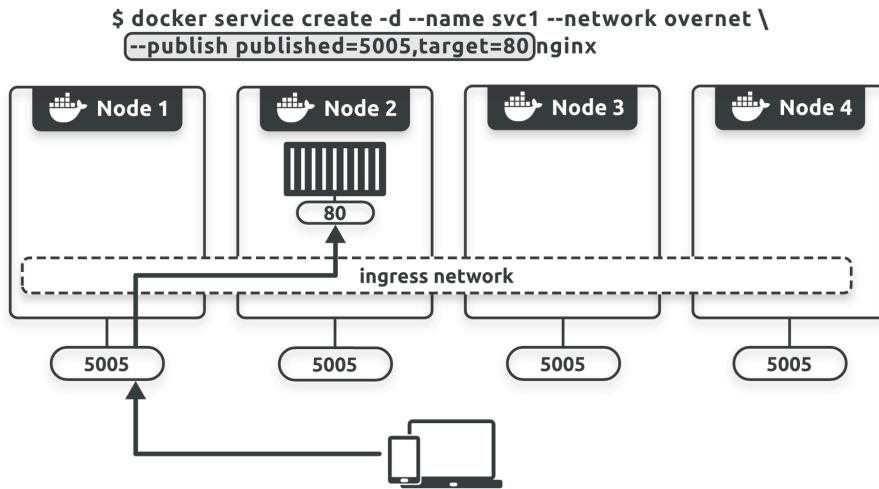


Figure 13.20

Let's quickly walk through the diagram.

The command at the top deploys a new Swarm service called **svc1** with one replica, attaches it to the **overnet** network and publishes it on port 5005 on the *ingress network*. Docker automatically creates the ingress network when you create the swarm, and it attaches every node to it. The act of publishing the service on port 5005 makes it accessible via port 5005 on every swarm node because every node is connected to the ingress network. Docker also creates a swarm-wide rule to route all traffic hitting nodes on port 5005 to port 80 in the svc1 replicas via the ingress network.

Now let's track that external request.

1. The external client sends a request to **Node 1** on port 5005
2. **Node 1** receives the request and knows to forward traffic arriving on port 5005 to the ingress network
3. The ingress network forwards the request to **Node 2** which is running a replica
4. **Node 2** receives the request and passes it to the replica on port 80

If the service has multiple replicas, swarm is clever enough to balance requests across them all.

Clean-up

If you've been following along, you'll have a lot of containers, networks, and services that you probably want to clean up.

Run the following command to delete the services you created.

```
$ docker service rm svc1
```

Now, delete the standalone containers you created.

```
$ docker rm c1 c2 client mactainer1 -f
```

Finally, delete the networks you created.

```
$ docker network rm localnet macvlan100
```

Docker Networking – The Commands

Docker networking has its own **docker network** sub-command, and the main commands include:

- **docker network ls** lists all the Docker networks available to the host.
- **docker network create** is how you create a new Docker network. You have to give the network a name and you can use the **-d** flag to specify which driver creates it.
- **docker network inspect** provides detailed configuration information about Docker networks.
- **docker network prune** deletes all unused networks on a Docker host.
- **docker network rm** Deletes specific networks on a Docker host or swarm.

You also ran some native Linux commands.

- **brctl show** prints a list of all kernel bridges on the Docker host and shows if any containers are connected.
- **ip link show** prints bridge configuration data. You ran an **ip link show docker0** to see the configuration of the **docker0** bridge on your Docker host.

Chapter Summary

The Container Network Model (CNM) is the design document for Docker networks and defines the three major constructs — *sandboxes*, *endpoints*, and *networks*.

Libnetwork is the reference implementation of the CMN and is an open-source project maintained by the Moby project. Docker uses it to implement its core networking, including control plane services such as service discovery.

Drivers extend the capabilities of libnetwork by implementing specific network topologies, such as bridge and overlay networks. Docker ships with built-in drivers, but you can also use third-party drivers.

Single-host *bridge networks* are the most basic type of Docker network but are only suitable for local development and very small applications. They do not scale, and you need to map containers to host ports if you want to publish services outside of the network.

Overlay networks are all the rage and are excellent container-only multi-host networks. We'll talk about them in-depth in the next chapter.

The *macvlan* driver lets you create Docker networks that connect containers to existing physical networks and VLANs. They make containers first-class citizens on external networks by giving them their own MAC and IP addresses. Unfortunately, you have to run your host NICs in promiscuous mode, meaning they won't work in public clouds.

14: Docker overlay networking

Overlay networks are at the center of most cloud-native microservices apps, and this chapter will get you up to speed on how they work in Docker.

I've divided the chapter into the following sections:

- Docker overlay networking – The TLDR
- Docker overlay networking history
- Building and testing overlay networks
- Overlay networks explained

Let's do some networking magic!

Docker overlay networking – The TLDR

Real-world containers need a reliable and secure way to communicate without caring which host they're running on or which networks those hosts are connected to. This is where overlay networks come into play — they create flat, secure, layer 2 networks that span multiple hosts. Containers on different hosts can connect to the same overlay network and communicate directly.

Docker offers native overlay networking that is simple to configure and secure by default.

Behind the scenes, Docker builds overlay networking on top of *libnetwork* and the native **overlay** driver. Libnetwork is the canonical implementation of the Container Network Model (CNM), and the **overlay** driver implements all of the machinery to build overlay networks.

Docker overlay networking history

In March 2015, Docker, Inc. acquired a container networking startup called *Socket Plane* with two goals in mind:

1. Bring overlay networking to Docker

2. Make container networking simple for developers

They accomplished both goals, and overlay networking continues to be at the heart of container networking in 2024 and the foreseeable future.

However, there's a lot of complexity hiding behind the simple Docker commands. Knowing the commands is probably enough if you're a casual Docker user. However, if you plan to use Docker in production, especially if you plan to use Swarm and Docker networking, then the things we'll cover will be vital.

Building and testing Docker overlay networks

You'll need at least two Docker nodes configured in a swarm to follow along. The examples in the book show the two nodes on different networks connected by a router, but yours can be on the same network. You can follow along with two Multipass VMs on the same laptop or computer, but any Docker configuration will work as long as the nodes can communicate. I don't recommend using Docker Desktop as you only get a single node and won't get the full experience.

Figure 14.1 shows the initial lab configuration. Remember, your nodes can be on the same network, this will just mean your *underlay network* is simpler. We'll explain underlay networks later.

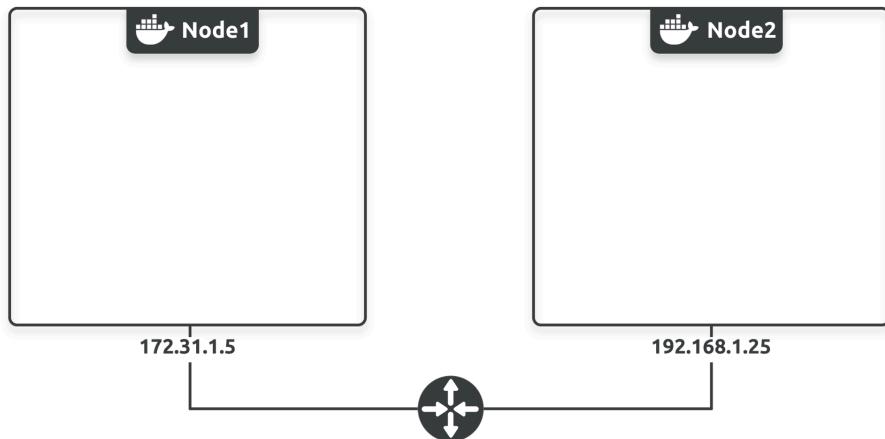


Figure 14.1

Build a Swarm

If you're following along, you'll need a swarm because overlay networks leverage the swarm's key-value store and other security features.

This section builds a two-node swarm with two Docker nodes called **node1** and **node2**. If you already have a swarm, you can skip this section.

You'll need to substitute the IP addresses and names with the values from your environment. You'll also need to ensure the following network ports are open between the two nodes:

- 2377/tcp for management plane comms
- 7946/tcp and 7946/udp for control plane comms (SWIM-based gossip)
- 4789/udp for the VXLAN data plane

Run the following command on **node1**.

```
$ docker swarm init  
Swarm initialized: current node (1ex3...o3px) is now a manager.
```

The command output includes a **docker swarm join** command. Copy this command and run it **node2**.

```
$ docker swarm join \  
--token SWMTKN-1-0hz2ec...2vye \  
172.31.1.5:2377  
This node joined a swarm as a worker.
```

You now have a two-node Swarm with **node1** as a manager and **node2** as a worker.

Create a new overlay network

Let's create a new encrypted overlay network called **uber-net**.

Run the following command from your manager node (**node1**).

```
$ docker network create -d overlay -o encrypted uber-net  
vdu1yly429jvt04hgdm0mjqc6
```

That's it. You've created a brand-new encrypted overlay network. The network spans both nodes in the swarm and Docker uses TLS to encrypt it (AES in GCM mode). It also rotates the encryption keys every 12 hours.

If you don't specify the `-o encrypted` flag, Docker will still encrypt the control plane (management traffic) but won't encrypt the data plane (application traffic). This can be important, as encrypting the data plane can decrease network performance by approximately 10%.

List the networks on **node1**.

```
$ docker network ls
NETWORK ID      NAME          DRIVER    SCOPE
65585dda7500  bridge        bridge    local
7e368a1105c7   docker_gwbridge bridge    local
a38083cdab1c  host          host     local
4dsq07jc36ip   ingress       overlay   swarm
d97e92a23945  none          null     local
vdu1yly429jv   uber-net     overlay   <<---- New overlay network
```

The new network is at the bottom of the list called **uber-net** and is scoped to the entire swarm (**SCOPE = swarm**). This means it spans every node in the swarm. However, if you list networks on **node2** you won't see the **uber-net** network. This is because Docker only extends overlay networks to worker nodes when they need them. In our example, Docker will extend the **uber-net** network to **node2** when it runs a container that needs it. This lazy approach to network deployment improves scalability by reducing the amount of network gossip on the swarm.

Attach a container to the overlay network

Now that you have an overlay network let's connect a container to it.

By default, you can only attach containers that are part of *swarm services* to overlay networks. If you want to add *standalone containers*, you need to create the overlay with the `--attachable` flag.

The example will create a swarm service called **test** with two replicas on the **uber-net** network. One replica will be deployed to **node1** and the other to **node2**, causing Docker to extend the overlay network to **node2**.

Run the following commands from **node1**.

```
$ docker service create --name test \
--network uber-net \
--replicas 2 \
ubuntu sleep infinity
```

Check the status of the service.

```
$ docker service ps test
ID          NAME      IMAGE      NODE      DESIRED STATE  CURRENT STATE
sm1...1nw   test.1    ubuntu:latest  node1    Running       Running
tro...kgk   test.2    ubuntu:latest  node2    Running       Running
```

The **NODE** column shows one replica running on each node.

Switch over to **node2** and run a **docker network ls** to verify it can now see the **uber-net** network.

Congratulations. You've created a new overlay network spanning two nodes on separate underlay networks and attached two containers to it. You'll appreciate the simplicity of what you've done when we reach the theory section and learn about the outrageous complexity going on behind the scenes!

Test the overlay network

Figure 14.2 shows the current setup with two containers running on different Docker hosts but connected to the same overlay.

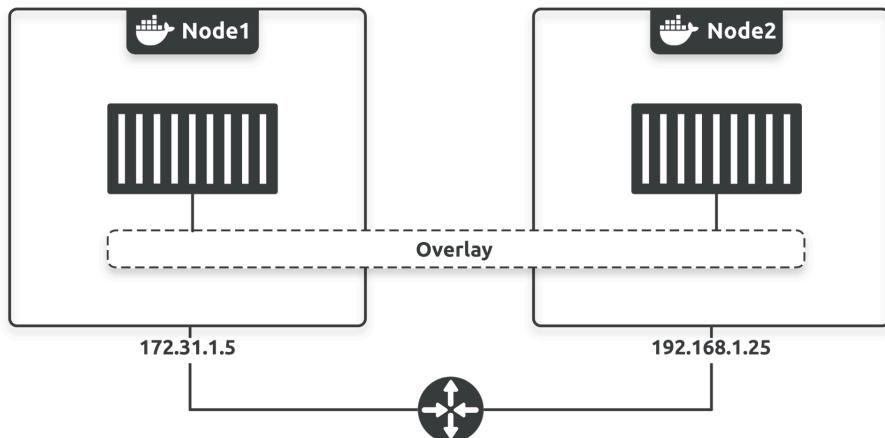


Figure 14.2

The following steps will walk you through obtaining the container names and IP addresses and then seeing if they can ping each other.

Switch back to **node1** and run a **docker network inspect** to see the overlay network's subnet information and any IP addresses it's assigned to service replicas.

```
$ docker network inspect uber-net
[
{
    "Name": "uber-net",
    "Id": "vdulyly429jvt04hgdm0mjqc6",
    "Scope": "swarm",
    "Driver": "overlay",
    "EnableIPv6": false,
    "IPAM": {
        "Driver": "default",
        "Options": null,
        "Config": [
            {
                "Subnet": "10.0.0.0/24",           <----- Subnet info
                "Gateway": "10.0.0.1"           <----- Subnet info
            }
        ],
        "Containers": {
            "Name": "test.1.tro80xqwm7k1bsyn3mt1fjkkgk",   <----- Replica ID
            "IPv4Address": "10.0.0.3/24",                  <----- Container IP
            <Snip>
        },
        <Snip>
    },
    <Snip>
```

I've snipped the output and highlighted the subnet info and the IPs of connected containers. One thing to note is that Docker only shows you the IP addresses of containers running on the local node. For example, the output in the book only shows the IP of the first replica called **test.1.tro...kgk**. If you run the same command on **node2**, you'll see the name and IP of the other replica.

Run the following commands on both nodes to get the local container names, IDs, and IP addresses of both replicas and make a note of them.

The ID at the end of the second command (**d7766923a5a7**) is the container ID as returned by the **docker ps** command. You'll need to substitute the value from your environment.

```
$ docker ps
CONTAINER ID IMAGE COMMAND CREATED STATUS NAME
d7766923a5a7 ubuntu:latest "sleep infinity" 2 hrs ago Up 2 hrs test.1.tr0...kgk

$ docker inspect \
--format='{{range .NetworkSettings.Networks}}{{.IPAddress}}{{end}}' d7766923a5a7
10.0.0.3
```

I have the following in my environment :

- **replica 1:** ID=d7766923a5a7, Name=test.1.tr0...kgk, IP=10.0.0.3
- **replica 2:** ID=b6c897d1186d, Name=test.2.sm1...1nw, IP=10.0.0.4

Figure 14.3 shows the configuration so far. Subnet and IP addresses may be different in your lab.

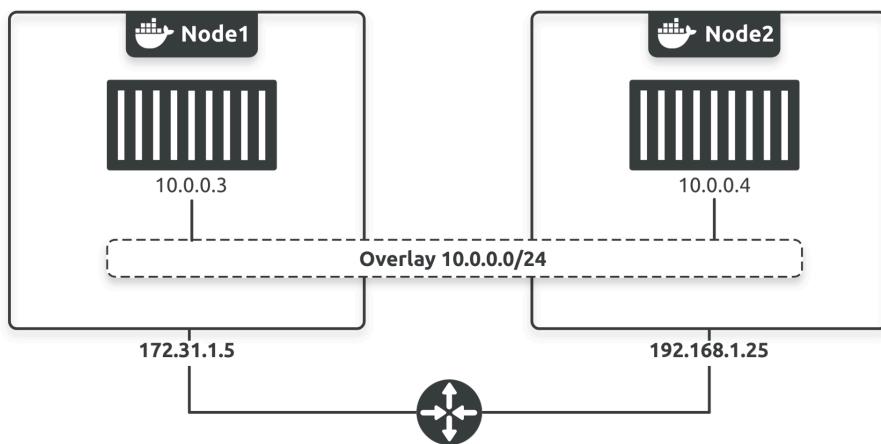


Figure 14.3

As you can see, a layer 2 overlay network spans both nodes, and each container is connected to it with its own IP. This means the container on **node1** can ping the container on **node2** even though both nodes are on different underlay networks.

Let's test it. You'll need the names and IPs of your containers.

Log on to either of the containers and install the **ping** utility.

```
$ docker exec -it d7766923a5a7 bash  
  
# apt update && apt-get install iputils-ping -y  
<Snip>  
Reading package lists... Done  
Building dependency tree  
Reading state information... Done  
<Snip>  
Setting up iputils-ping (3:20190709-3) ...  
Processing triggers for libc-bin (2.31-0ubuntu9) ...
```

Now ping the remote container by IP and then by replica ID.

```
# ping 10.0.0.4  
PING 10.0.0.4 (10.0.0.4) 56(84) bytes of data.  
64 bytes from 10.0.0.4: icmp_seq=1 ttl=64 time=1.06 ms  
64 bytes from 10.0.0.4: icmp_seq=2 ttl=64 time=1.07 ms  
64 bytes from 10.0.0.4: icmp_seq=3 ttl=64 time=1.03 ms  
64 bytes from 10.0.0.4: icmp_seq=4 ttl=64 time=1.26 ms  
^C  
  
# ping test.2.sm180xqwm7k1bsyn3mt1fj1nw  
PING test.2.sm180xqwm7k1bsyn3mt1fj1nw (10.0.0.4) 56(84) bytes of data.  
64 bytes from test.2.sm1...1nw.uber-net (10.0.0.4): icmp_seq=1 ttl=64 time=2.83 ms  
64 bytes from test.2.sm1...1nw.uber-net (10.0.0.4): icmp_seq=2 ttl=64 time=8.39 ms  
64 bytes from test.2.sm1...1nw.uber-net (10.0.0.4): icmp_seq=3 ttl=64 time=5.88 ms  
^C
```

Congratulations. The containers can ping each other via the overlay network, and all the traffic is encrypted.

You can also trace the route of the ping command. This will report a single hop, proving that the containers are communicating directly via the overlay network — blissfully unaware of any underlay networks being traversed.

You'll need to install **traceroute** in the container for this to work.

```
# apt install traceroute  
<Snip>  
  
# traceroute 10.0.0.4  
traceroute to 10.0.0.4 (10.0.0.4), 30 hops max, 60 byte packets  
1 test-svc.2.sm180xqwm7k1bsyn3mt1fj1nw.uber-net (10.0.0.4) 1.110ms 1.034ms 1.073ms
```

So far, you've created an overlay network and a swarm service that connected two containers to it. Swarm scheduled the containers to two different nodes and you proved they could ping each other via the overlay network.

Now that you've seen how easy it is to build and use secure overlay networks, let's find out how Docker builds them behind the scenes.

Overlay networks explained

First and foremost, Docker uses *VXLAN tunnels* to create virtual layer 2 overlay networks. So, let's do a quick VXLAN primer.

VXLAN primer

At the highest level, Docker uses VXLANs to create layer 2 networks on top of existing layer 3 infrastructure. That's a lot of jargon that means you can create simple networks on top of complex networks. The hands-on example in the previous sections created a new 10.0.0.0/24 layer 2 network that abstracted a more complex network topology below. See Figure 14.4 and remember that your underlay network configuration was probably different.

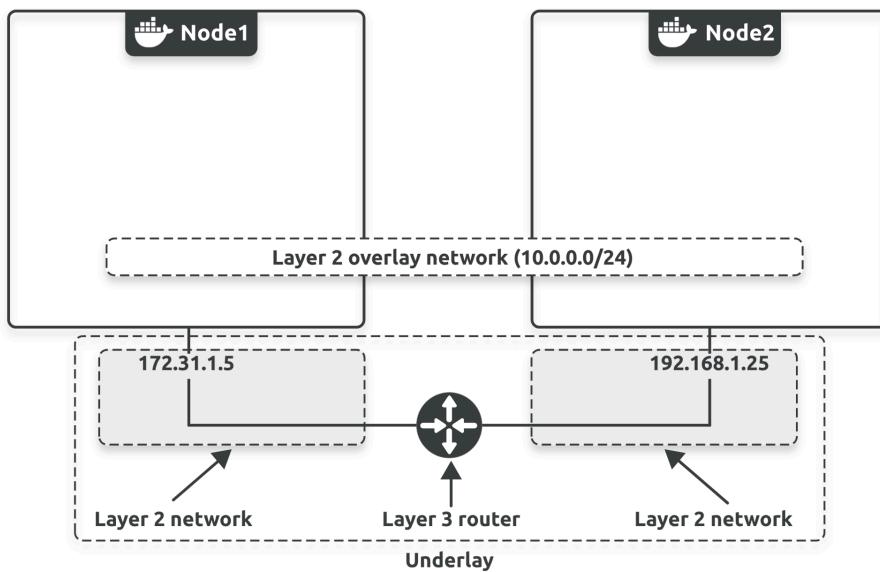


Figure 14.4

Fortunately, VXLAN is an *encapsulation* technology and, therefore, transparent to existing routers and network infrastructure. This means the routers and other infrastructure in the underlay network see the VXLAN/overlay traffic as regular IP/UDP packets and handle it without requiring changes.

To create the overlay, Docker creates a *VXLAN tunnel* through the underlay networks, and this tunnel is what allows the overlay traffic to flow freely without having to interact with the complexity of the underlay networks.

Terminology: We use the terms *underlay networks* or *underlay infrastructure* to refer to the networks the overlay tunnels through.

Each end of the VXLAN tunnel is terminated by a *VXLAN Tunnel Endpoint* (VTEP), and it's this VTEP that encapsulates and de-encapsulates the traffic entering and exiting the tunnel. See Figure 14.5.

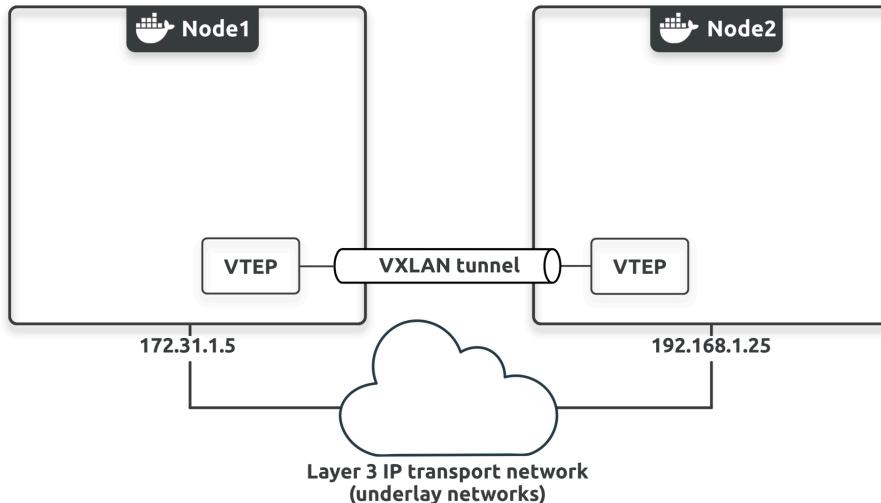


Figure 14.5

The image shows the layer 3 infrastructure as a cloud for two reasons:

- It can be a lot more complex than the two networks and a single router from the previous diagrams
- The VXLAN tunnel abstracts the complexity and makes it opaque

In reality, the VXLAN tunnel traverses the underlay network. However, I don't show this in the diagram to keep the diagram simple.

Traffic flow example

The hands-on examples from earlier had two hosts connected via an IP network. You deployed an overlay network across both hosts, connected two containers to it, and did a ping test. Let's explain some of the things that happened behind the scenes.

Docker created a new *sandbox* (network namespace) on each host with a new switch called **Br0**. It also created a VTEP with one end connected to the **Br0** virtual switch and

the other end connected to the host’s network stack. The end in the host’s network stack got an IP address on the underlay network that the host is connected to and was bound to UDP port 4789. Finally, the two VTEPs on each host created a VXLAN tunnel as the backbone for the overlay network.

Figure 14.6 shows the configuration. Remember, the VXLAN tunnel goes through the networks at the bottom of the diagram; I’ve just drawn it higher up for readability.

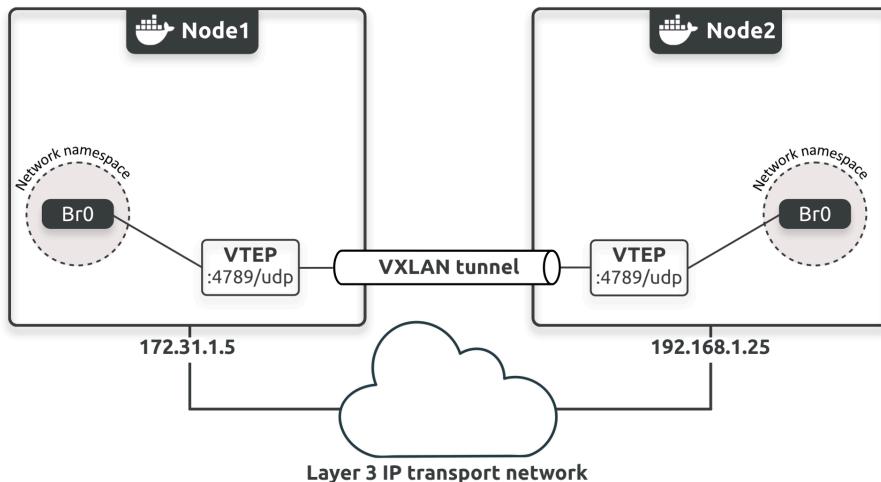


Figure 14.6

At this point, you’ve created the VXLAN overlay, and you’re ready to connect containers.

Docker now creates a virtual Ethernet adapter (**veth**) in each container and connects it to the local **Br0** virtual switch. The final topology looks like Figure 14.7, and although it’s complex, you should now see how the containers communicate over the VXLAN overlay despite their hosts being on two separate networks — the overlay is a virtual network tunneled through the underlay networks.

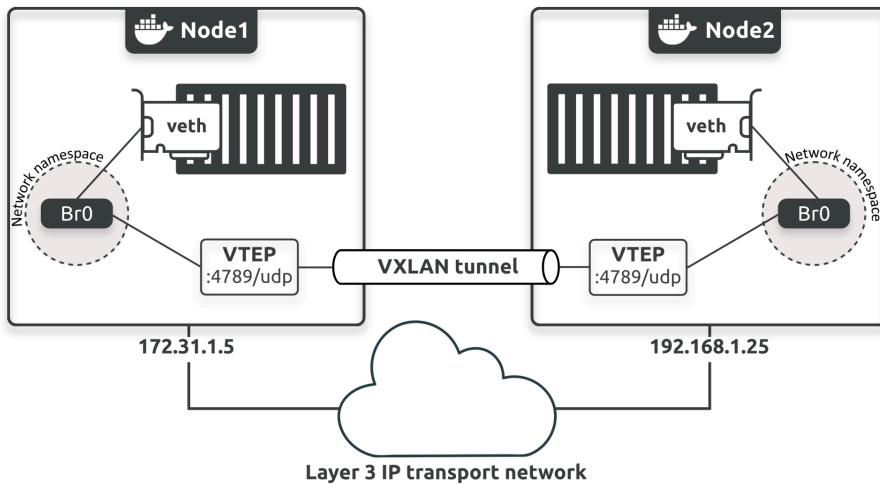


Figure 14.7

Now that you know how Docker creates overlay networks, let's see how the two containers communicate.

Warning! This section is very technical, and you don't need to understand it all for day-to-day operations.

For this example, we'll call the container on node1 "C1" and the container on node2 "C2". We'll also assume C1 wants to ping C2 like we did in the practical example earlier. Figure 14.8 shows the full configuration with container names and IPs added.

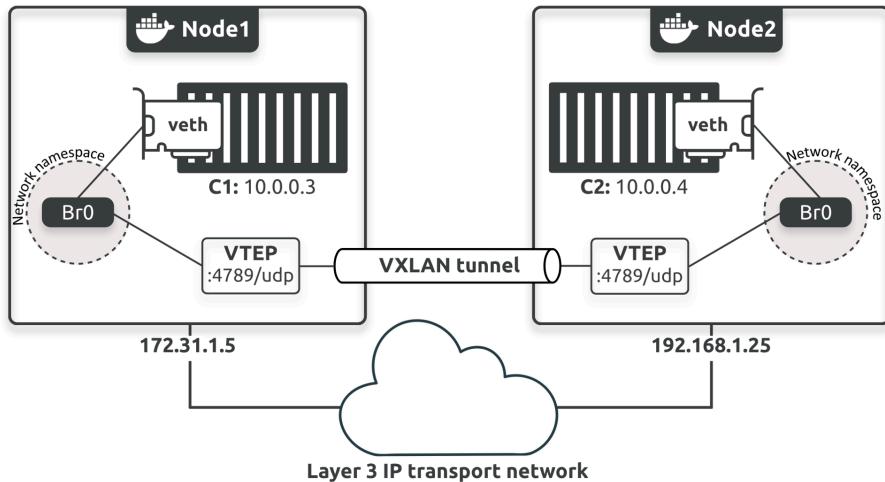


Figure 14.8

C1 initiates a ping request to **10.0.0.4** — the IP address of **C2**.

C1 doesn't have an entry for **10.0.0.4** in its local MAC address table (ARP cache), so it floods the packet on all interfaces, including the veth interface connected to the **Br0** bridge. The **Br0** bridge knows it can forward traffic for **10.0.0.4** to the connected VTEP interface and sends a proxy ARP reply to the container. This results in the veth *learning* how to forward the packet by updating its own MAC table to send all future packets for **10.0.0.4** directly to the local VTEP. The **Br0** switch knew about the **C2** container because Docker propagates details of all new containers to every swarm node via the network's built-in gossip protocol.

Next, the veth in the **C1** container sends the ping to the VTEP interface which encapsulates it for transmission through the VXLAN tunnel. The encapsulation adds a VXLAN header containing a VXLAN network ID (VNID) that maps traffic from VLANs to VXLANs and vice versa — each VLAN gets mapped to its own VNID so that packets can be de-encapsulated on the receiving end and forwarded to the correct VLAN. This maintains network isolation.

The encapsulation also wraps the frame in a UDP packet and adds the IP of the remote VTEP on node2 in the *destination IP field*. It also adds the UDP/4789 socket information. This encapsulation allows the packets to be routed across the underlay networks without the underlays knowing anything about VXLAN.

When the packet arrives at node2, the host's kernel sees it's addressed to UDP port 4789 and knows it has a VTEP bound to this socket. This means it sends the packet to the VTEP, which reads the VNID, de-encapsulates it, and sends it to its own local **Br0** switch on the VLAN corresponding to the VNID. From there, it delivers it to the **C2**

container.

And that, my friends, is how Docker uses VXLAN to build and operate overlay networks — a whole load of mind-blowing complexity beautifully hidden behind a single Docker command.

I'm hoping that's enough to get you started and help you when talking to your networking team about the networking aspects of your Docker infrastructure. On the topic of talking to your networking team... don't approach them thinking that you now know everything about VXLAN. If you do, you'll probably embarrass yourself. I'm speaking from experience ;-)

One final thing. Docker also supports layer 3 routing *within* an overlay network. For example, you can create a single overlay network with two subnets, and Docker will handle the routing. The following command will create a new overlay called **prod-net** with two subnets. Docker will automatically create two virtual switches called **Br0** and **Br1** inside the *sandbox* and handle all the routing.

```
$ docker network create --subnet=10.1.1.0/24 --subnet=11.1.1.0/24 -d overlay prod-net
```

Clean up

If you followed along, you'll have created an overlay network called **uber-net** and deployed a service called **test**. You *may* also have created a swarm.

Run the following command to delete the **test** service.

```
$ docker service rm test
```

Delete the **uber-net** network with the following command. You may have to wait a few seconds while Docker deletes the service using it.

```
$ docker network rm uber-net
```

If you no longer need the swarm, you can run a **docker swarm leave -f** command on both nodes. You should run it on **node2** first.

Docker overlay networking – The commands

- **docker network create** tells Docker to create a new network. You use the **-d overlay** flag to use the overlay driver to create an overlay network. You can also pass the **-o encrypted** flag to tell Docker to encrypt network traffic. However, performance may drop in the region of 10%.

- **docker network ls** lists all the container networks visible to a Docker host. Docker hosts running in *swarm mode* only see overlay networks if they run containers attached to the network. This keeps network-related management traffic to a minimum.
- **docker network inspect** shows detailed information about a particular container network. You can find out the scope, driver, IPv4 and IPv6 info, subnet configuration, IP addresses of connected containers, VXLAN network ID, encryption state, and more.
- **docker network rm** deletes a network.

Chapter Summary

In this chapter, you created a new Docker overlay network and learned about the technologies Docker uses to build them.

15: Volumes and persistent data

Stateful applications that create and manage data are a big part of modern cloud-native apps. This chapter explains how Docker volumes help stateful applications manage their data.

I've split the chapter into the following parts:

- Volumes and persistent data – The TLDR
- Containers without volumes
- Containers with volumes
- The commands

Volumes and persistent data – The TLDR

There are two main types of data — persistent and non-persistent.

Persistent data is the stuff you care about and need to *keep*. It includes things like customer records, financial data, research results, audit data, and even some types of logs. *Non-persistent data* is the stuff you don't care about and don't need to keep. We call applications that create and manage persistent data *stateful apps*, and applications that don't create or manage persistent data *stateless apps*.

Both are important, and Docker has solutions for both.

For stateless apps, Docker creates every container with an area of non-persistent local storage that's tied to the container lifecycle. This storage is suitable for scratch data and temporary files, but you'll lose it when you delete the container or the container terminates.

Docker has *volumes* for stateful apps that create and manage important data. Volumes are separate objects that you mount into containers, and they have their own lifecycles. This means you don't lose the volumes or the data on them when you delete containers. You can even mount volumes into different containers.

That's the TLDR. Let's take a closer look.

Containers without volumes

In the early days of Docker, containers were only good for stateless applications that didn't generate important data. However, despite being *stateless*, many of these apps still needed a place to write temporary scratch data. So, as shown in Figure 15.1, Docker creates containers by stacking read-only image layers and placing a thin layer of local storage on top. The same technology allows multiple containers to share the same read-only image layers.

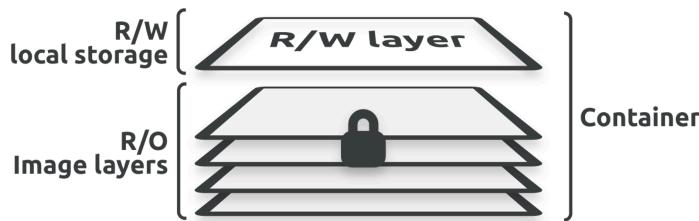


Figure 15.1 Ephemeral container storage

This thin layer of local storage is integral to the read-write nature of containers. For example, if an application needs to update existing files or add new files, it makes the changes in the local storage layer, and Docker merges them into the view of the container. However, the local storage is coupled to the container's lifecycle, meaning it gets created when you create the container, and deleted when you delete it. This means it's not a good place for data that you need to keep (*persist*).

Docker keeps the local storage layer on the Docker host's filesystem, and you'll hear it called various names such as *the thin writeable layer*, *ephemeral storage*, *read-write storage*, and *graphdriver storage*. It's usually located in the following locations on your Docker hosts:

- Linux containers: `/var/lib/docker/<storage-driver>/...`
- Windows containers: `C:\ProgramData\Docker\windowsfilter\...`

Even though the local storage layer allows you to update live containers, you should never do this. Instead, you should treat containers as *immutable objects* and never change them once deployed. For example, if you need to fix or change the configuration of a live container, you should create and test a new container with the changes and then replace the live container with the new one.

To be clear, applications like databases can change the data they manage. But users and configuration tools should never change the container's *configuration*, such as its network or application configuration. You should always make changes like these in a new container and then replace the old container with the new one.

If your containers don't create persistent data, this thin writable layer of local storage will be fine, and you'll be good to go. However, if your containers create persistent data, you need to read the next section.

Containers with volumes

There are three main reasons you should use *volumes* to handle persistent data in containers:

- Volumes are independent objects that are not tied to the lifecycle of a container
- You can map volumes to specialized external storage systems
- Multiple containers on different Docker hosts can use volumes to access and share the same data

At a high level, you create a volume, then create a container, and finally mount the volume into the container. When you mount it into the volume, you mount it into a directory in the container's filesystem, and anything you write to that directory gets stored in the volume. If you delete the container, the volume and data will still exist. You'll even be able to mount the surviving volume into another container.

Figure 15.2 shows a Docker volume outside the container as a separate object. The volume is mounted into the container's filesystem at **/data**, and anything you write to that directory will be stored on the volume and exist after you delete the container.

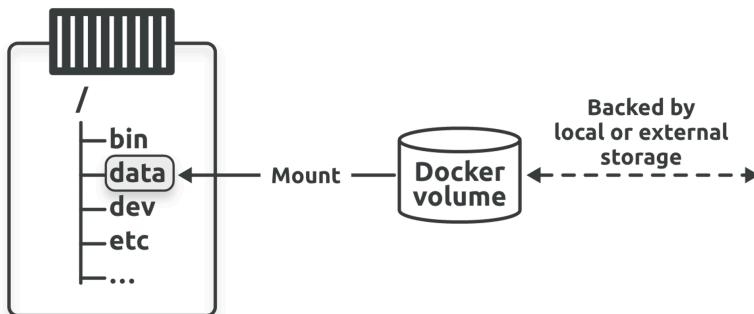


Figure 15.2 High-level view of volumes and containers

The image also shows that you can map the volume to an external storage system or a directory on the Docker host. External storage systems can be cloud services or dedicated storage appliances, but either way, the volume's lifecycle is decoupled from the container. All of the container's other directories use the thin writable layer in the local storage area on the Docker host.

Creating and managing Docker volumes

Volumes are first-class objects in Docker. This means there's a **docker volume** sub-command, and a **volume** resource in the API.

Run the following command to create a new volume called **myvol**.

```
$ docker volume create myvol  
myvol
```

By default, Docker creates new volumes with the built-in **local** driver. And, as the name of the driver suggests, these volumes are only available to containers on the same node as the volume. You can use the **-d** flag to specify a different driver, but you'll need to install the driver first.

Third-party drivers²⁰ provide advanced features and access to external storage systems such as cloud storage services and on-premises storage systems such as SAN and NAS. Figure 15.3 shows a Docker host connected to an external storage system via a plugin (driver).

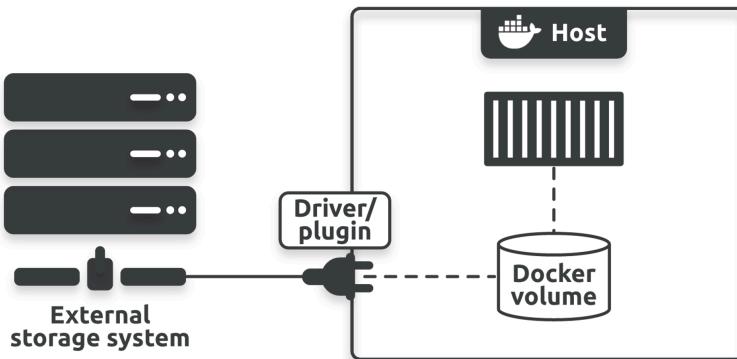


Figure 15.3 Plugging external storage into Docker

Once you've created the volume, you can see it with the **docker volume ls** command and inspect it with the **docker volume inspect** command.

²⁰https://docs.docker.com/engine/extend/legacy_plugins/#volume-plugins

```
$ docker volume ls
DRIVER      VOLUME NAME
local       myvol

$ docker volume inspect myvol
[
  {
    "CreatedAt": "2024-05-15T12:23:14Z",
    "Driver": "local",
    "Labels": null,
    "Mountpoint": "/var/lib/docker/volumes/myvol/_data",
    "Name": "myvol",
    "Options": null,
    "Scope": "local"
  }
]
```

Notice that the **Driver** and **Scope** fields are both set to **local**. This means you created the volume with the **local** driver, and it's only available to containers on this Docker host. **Mountpoint** tells you where the volume exists in the Docker host's filesystem.

By default, Docker gives every volume created with the **local** driver its own directory on the host under **/var/lib/docker/volumes**. This means anyone with access to the Docker host can bypass the container and access the volume's contents directly in the host's filesystem. You saw this in the Docker Compose chapter when we copied a file directly into a volume's directory on the Docker host, and the file immediately appeared in the volume inside the container. However, that's not a recommended practice.

Now that you've created a volume, you can create containers to use it. However, before you do that, there are two ways to delete Docker volumes:

- **docker volume prune**
- **docker volume rm**

The **docker volume prune** command deletes **all volumes** not mounted into a container or service replica, so use it with caution!

The **docker volume rm** command is more precise and lets you specify which volumes to delete.

Neither command will delete a volume in use by a container or service replica.

The **myvol** volume you created isn't used by a container, so you can delete it with either command. Be careful if you use the **prune** command, as it may also delete other volumes.

```
$ docker volume prune --all

WARNING! This will remove all local volumes not used by at least one container.
Are you sure you want to continue? [y/N] y
Deleted Volumes:
myvol

Total reclaimed space: 0B
```

Congratulations. You've created, inspected, and deleted a Docker volume, and none of the actions involved a container. This proves that volumes are decoupled from containers.

At this point, you know all the commands to create, list, inspect, and delete Docker volumes. You've even seen how to deploy them via Compose files in the Compose and Swarm stacks chapters. However, you can also deploy volumes via Dockerfiles by using the **VOLUME <container-mount-point>**. Interestingly, you cannot specify a host directory when you define volumes in a Dockerfile. This is because host directories can differ depending on your host OS, and you could easily break your builds if you specified a directory that doesn't exist on a host. As a result, defining a volume in a Dockerfile requires you to specify host directories at deployment time.

Using volumes with containers

Let's see how to use volumes with containers.

Run the following command to create a new standalone container called **voltainer** that mounts a volume called **bizvol**.

```
$ docker run -it --name voltainer \
  --mount source=bizvol,target=/vol \
  alpine
```

The command specified the **--mount** flag, telling Docker to mount a volume called **bizvol** into the container at **/vol**. The command completed successfully even though you didn't have a volume called **bizvol**. This raises an important point:

- If you specify a volume that already exists, Docker will use it
- If you specify a volume that does not exist, Docker will create it

In our case, **bizvol** didn't exist, so Docker created it and mounted it into the container.

Type **Ctrl PQ** to return to your local shell, and then list volumes to make sure Docker created it.

```
# <Ctrl-PQ>

$ docker volume ls
DRIVER      VOLUME NAME
local       bizvol
```

Even though volumes are decoupled from containers, Docker won't let you delete this one because it's in use by the **voltainer** container.

Try to delete it.

```
$ docker volume rm bizvol
Error response from daemon: remove bizvol: volume is in use - [b44d3f82...dd2029ca]
```

As expected, you can't delete it.

The volume is brand new, so it doesn't have any data. Let's **exec** onto the container and write some data to it.

```
$ docker exec -it voltainer sh
# echo "I promise to write a book review on Amazon" > /vol/file1
```

The command writes some text to a file called **file1** in the **/vol** directory where the volume is mounted.

Run a few commands to make sure the file and data exist.

```
# ls -l /vol
total 4
-rw-r--r-- 1 root  root   50 May 23 08:49 file1

# cat /vol/file1
I promise to write a book review on Amazon
```

Type **exit** to return to your Docker host's shell, and then delete the container with the following commands.

```
# exit

$ docker rm voltainer -f
voltainer
```

Check that Docker deleted the container but kept the volume.

```
$ docker ps -a
CONTAINER ID        IMAGE       COMMAND      CREATED          STATUS
$ docker volume ls
DRIVER    VOLUME NAME
local     bizvol
```

As the volume still exists, you can view its contents in the Docker host's local filesystem. Remember, though, that it's not recommended to access volumes directly via the host's filesystem. We're just showing you how to do it for demonstration and educational reasons.

Run the following commands from your Docker host terminal. They'll show the contents of the volume's directory on your Docker host. The first command will show that the file still exists, and the second will show its contents.

This step won't work on Docker Desktop, as Docker Desktop runs inside a VM. You may have to prefix the commands with **sudo**.

```
$ ls -l /var/lib/docker/volumes/bizvol/_data/
total 4
-rw-r--r-- 1 root root 50 Jan 12 14:25 file1

$ cat /var/lib/docker/volumes/bizvol/_data/file1
I promise to write a book review on Amazon
```

Great, the volume and the data still exist.

Let's see if you can mount the existing **bizvol** volume into a new service or container. Run the following command to create a new container called **newctr** that mounts bizvol at **/vol**.

```
$ docker run -it \
  --name newctr \
  --mount source=bizvol,target=/vol \
  alpine sh
```

Your terminal is now attached to the **newctr** container. Check to see if the volume and data are mounted as expected.

```
# cat /vol/file1
I promise to write a book review on Amazon
```

Congratulations. You've created a volume, written some data to it, deleted the original container, mounted it in a second container, and verified the data still exists.

Type **exit** to leave the container and jump over to Amazon to leave the book review you promised to write.

If you left a review, thanks! If you didn't, I'll cry, but I'll live ;-)

Sharing storage across cluster nodes

Integrating Docker with *external storage systems* lets you present shared storage to multiple nodes so that the containers running on different nodes can share the same volumes. These external systems can be cloud storage services or enterprise storage systems in your on-premises data centers. For example, you can present a single storage LUN or NFS share (shared volume) to multiple Docker hosts so that any container on those hosts can access and share the volume. Figure 15.4 shows an external storage system presenting a shared volume to two Docker nodes. The Docker nodes use the appropriate driver for the external system to make the shared volume available to either or both containers.

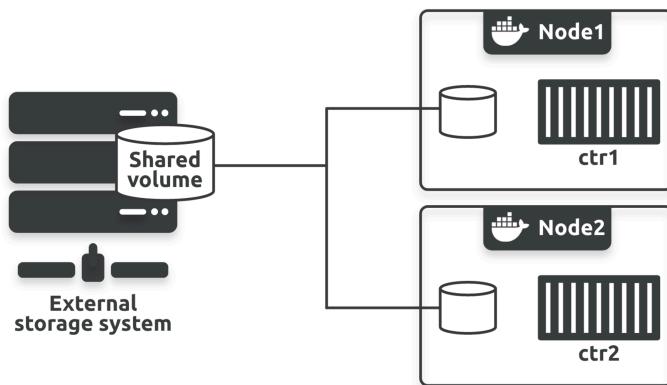


Figure 15.4

Building a shared setup like this requires a lot of things. You need access to specialized storage systems and knowledge of how they work. You also need a volume driver/plugin that works with the external storage system. Finally, you need to know how your applications read and write to the shared storage to avoid potential data corruption.

Potential data corruption

Data corruption is a major concern for any shared storage configuration.

Assume the following example based on Figure 15.4.

The application running in **ctr1** writes an update to the shared volume. However, instead of directly committing the update, it keeps it in a local cache for faster recall. At this point, the application in **ctr1** *thinks* it's written data to the volume. However, before **ctr1** flushes its cache and commits the data to the volume, the app in **ctr2** updates the same data with a different value and commits it directly to the volume. At this point, both applications *think* they've updated the data in the volume, but in reality, only

the application in **ctr2** has. A few seconds later, **ctr1** flushes the data to the volume and overwrites the changes made by the application in **ctr2**. However, neither of the applications is aware of the changes the other has made.

This is why you need to design applications that share data to coordinate updates to shared volumes.

Clean up

If you've been following along, you'll have a container and a volume.

Run the following command to delete the container.

```
$ docker rm
```

Now, run this command to delete the volume.

```
$ docker volume rm bizvol
```

Volumes and persistent data – The Commands

- **docker volume create** creates new volumes. By default, it creates them with the **local** driver, but you can use the **-d** flag to specify a different driver.
- **docker volume ls** lists all volumes on your Docker host.
- **docker volume inspect** shows you detailed volume information. You can use this command to see where a volume exists in the Docker host's filesystem.
- **docker volume prune** deletes **all** volumes not in use by a container or service replica. **Use with caution!**
- **docker volume rm** deletes specific volumes that are not in use.

Chapter Summary

There are two main types of data: *persistent* and *non-persistent*.

Persistent data is data you need to keep, and non-persistent data is data you don't need to keep.

By default, all containers get a layer of writable non-persistent storage that lives and dies with the container. We sometimes call this *local storage*, and it's ideal for non-persistent

data. However, if your apps create data you need to keep, you should store the data in a Docker volume.

Docker volumes are first-class objects in the Docker API, and you manage them independently of containers using their own **docker volume** sub-command. This means deleting containers doesn't delete the data in their volumes.

A few third-party plugins exist that provide Docker with access to specialized external storage systems.

Volumes are the recommended way to work with persistent data in Docker environments.

16: Docker security

If security is hard, we're less likely to implement it. Fortunately, most of the security in Docker is easy and pre-configured with sensible defaults. This means you get a *moderately secure* experience with zero effort. The defaults are not perfect, but they're a good starting point.

Docker supports all major Linux security technologies and adds some of its own. As such, I've divided the chapter so we cover the Linux security technologies first and finish the chapter covering the Docker technologies:

- Docker security – The TLDR
- Linux security technologies
 - Kernel namespaces
 - Control Groups
 - Capabilities
 - Mandatory Access Control
 - seccomp
- Docker security technologies
 - Swarm security
 - Docker Scout and vulnerability scanning
 - Docker Content Trust
 - Docker secrets

The chapter focuses heavily on Linux, but the sections relating to Docker security technologies apply to Linux and Windows containers.

Docker security – The TLDR

Good security is about layers and defence in depth, and more layers is always better. Fortunately, Docker offers a lot of security layers, including the ones shown in Figure 16.1.

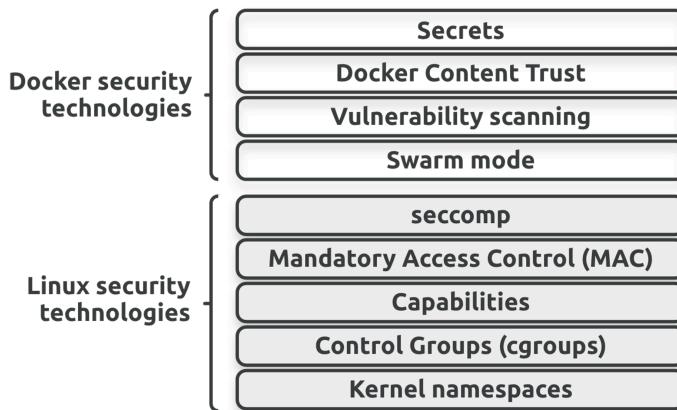


Figure 16.1

As you can see, Docker leverages the common Linux security and workload isolation technologies, including *namespaces*, *control groups*, *capabilities*, *mandatory access control (MAC)*, and *seccomp*. It ships with sensible defaults for each one, but you can customize them to your specific requirements.

Docker also has its own security technologies, including **Docker Scout** and **Docker Content Trust**.

Docker Scout offers class-leading *vulnerability scanning* that scans your images, provides detailed reports on known vulnerabilities, and recommends solutions. Docker Content Trust (DCT) lets you cryptographically sign and verify images.

If you use Docker Swarm, you'll also get all of the following that Docker automatically configures: cryptographic node IDs, mutual authentication (TLS), automatic CA configuration and certificate rotation, secure cluster join tokens, an encrypted cluster store, encrypted networks, and more.

Other security-related technologies also exist, but the important thing to know is that Docker works with the major Linux security technologies and adds a few of its own. Sometimes, the Linux security technologies can be complex and challenging to work with, but the native Docker ones are always easy.

Kernel Namespaces

Kernel namespaces, usually shortened to *namespaces*, are the main technology for building containers.

Let's quickly compare namespaces and containers with hypervisors and virtual machines (VM).

Namespaces virtualize operating system constructs such as process trees and filesystems, whereas *hypervisors virtualize physical resources* such as CPUs and disks. In the VM model, hypervisors create virtual machines by grouping virtual CPUs, virtual disks, and virtual network cards so that every VM looks, smells, and feels like a physical machine. In the container model, *namespaces* create virtual operating systems (containers) by grouping virtual process trees, virtual filesystems, and virtual network interfaces so that every container looks, smells, and feels exactly like a regular OS.

At a very high level, namespaces provide lightweight isolation but do not provide a strong security boundary. Compared with VMs, containers are more efficient, but virtual machines are more secure.

Don't worry, though. Platforms like Docker implement additional security technologies, such as cgroups, capabilities, and seccomp, to improve container security.

Namespaces are a tried and tested technology that's existed in the Linux kernel for a very long time. However, they were complex and hard to work with until Docker came along and hid all the complexity behind the simple **docker run** command and a developer-friendly API.

At the time of writing, every Docker container gets its own instance of the following namespaces:

- Process ID (pid)
- Network (net)
- Filesystem/mount (mnt)
- Inter-process Communication (ipc)
- User (user)
- UTS (uts)

Figure 16.2 shows a single Docker host running two containers. The host OS has its own collection of namespaces we call the *root namespaces*, and each container has its own collection of equivalent isolated namespaces. Applications in containers think they're running on their own host and are unaware of the *root namespaces* or namespaces in other containers.

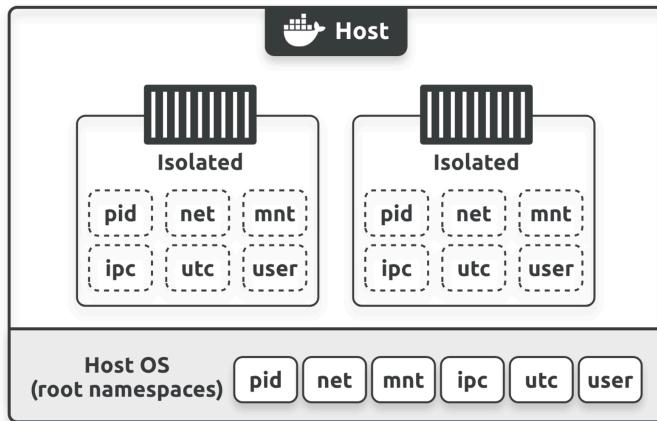


Figure 16.2

Let's briefly look at how Docker uses each namespace:

- **Process ID namespace:** Docker uses the **pid** namespace to give each container its own isolated process tree. This means every container gets its own PID 1 and cannot see or access processes running in other containers. Nor can any container see or access processes running on the host.
- **Network namespace:** Docker uses the **net** namespace to provide each container with an isolated network stack. This stack includes interfaces, IP addresses, port ranges, and routing tables. For example, every container gets its own **eth0** interface with its own unique IP and range of ports.
- **Mount namespace:** Every container has its own **mnt** namespace with its own unique isolated root (/) filesystem. This means every container can have its own **/etc**, **/var**, **/dev**, and other important filesystem constructs. Processes inside a container cannot access the host's filesystem or filesystems in other containers.
- **Inter-process Communication namespace:** Docker uses the **ipc** namespace for shared memory access within a container. It also isolates the container from shared memory on the host and other containers.
- **User namespace:** Docker gives each container its own users that are only valid inside the container. It also lets you map those users to different users on the Docker host. For example, you can map a container's **root** user to a non-root user on the host.
- **UTS namespace:** Docker uses the **uts** namespace to provide each container with its own hostname.

Remember, a container is a collection of namespaces that Docker organizes to look like a regular OS. These namespaces provide isolation, but they are not a strong enough

security boundary on their own. This is why Docker augments container security with the technologies we're about to discuss.

Control Groups

If namespaces are about *isolation*, control groups (cgroups) are about *limits*.

Think of containers as similar to rooms in a hotel. While each room might appear to be isolated, they actually share a lot of things such as water supply, electricity supply, air conditioning, swimming pool, gym, elevators, breakfast bar, and more. Containers are similar — even though they're isolated, they share a lot of common resources such as the host's CPU, RAM, network I/O, and disk I/O.

Docker uses *cgroups* to limit a container's use of these shared resources and prevent any container from consuming them all and causing a denial of service (DoS) attack.

Capabilities

The Linux root user is extremely powerful, and you shouldn't use it to run apps and containers.

However, it's not as simple as running them as non-root users, as most non-root users are so powerless that they are practically useless. What's needed is a way to run apps and containers with the exact set of permissions they need — nothing more, nothing less.

This is where *capabilities* come to the rescue.

Under the hood, the Linux **root** user is a combination of a long list of *capabilities*. Some of these capabilities include:

- **CAP_CHOWN**: lets you change file ownership
- **CAP_NET_BIND_SERVICE**: lets you bind a socket to low-numbered network ports
- **CAP_SETUID**: lets you elevate the privilege level of a process
- **CAP_SYS_BOOT**: lets you reboot the system.

The list goes on and is long.

Docker leverages capabilities so that you can run containers as **root** but strip out all the capabilities you don't need. For example, suppose the only capability your container needs is the ability to bind to low-numbered network ports. In that case,

Docker can start the container as root, *drop all root capabilities*, and then add back the `CAP_NET_BIND_SERVICE` capability.

This is a good example of implementing the principle of *least privilege* as you end up with a container that only has the capabilities it needs. Docker also sets restrictions to prevent containers from re-adding dropped capabilities.

Docker ships with sensible out-of-the-box capabilities, but you should configure your own for your production apps and containers. However, configuring your own requires extensive effort and testing.

Mandatory Access Control systems

Docker works with major Linux MAC technologies such as AppArmor and SELinux.

Depending on your Linux distribution, Docker applies default AppArmor or SELinux profiles to all new containers, and according to the Docker documentation, the default profiles are *moderately protective while providing wide application compatibility*.

You can tell Docker to start containers without these policies, and you can configure your own. However, as with *capabilities*, configuring your own policies is very powerful but requires **a lot** of effort and testing.

seccomp

Docker uses seccomp to limit which syscalls a container can make to the host's kernel.

Syscalls are how applications ask the Linux kernel to perform tasks. At the time of writing, Linux has over 300 syscalls and the default Docker profile disables approximately 40-50.

As per the Docker security philosophy, all new containers get a default seccomp profile configured with *sensible defaults* designed to provide *moderate security without impacting application compatibility*.

As always, you can customize your own seccomp profiles or tell Docker to start containers without one. Unfortunately, the Linux syscall table is long, and configuring custom seccomp policies may be prohibitively complex for some users.

Final thoughts on the Linux security technologies

Docker supports most of the important Linux security technologies and ships with sensible defaults that add security without being too restrictive. Figure 16.3 shows how Docker uses them to build a *defence in depth* security posture with multiple layers.

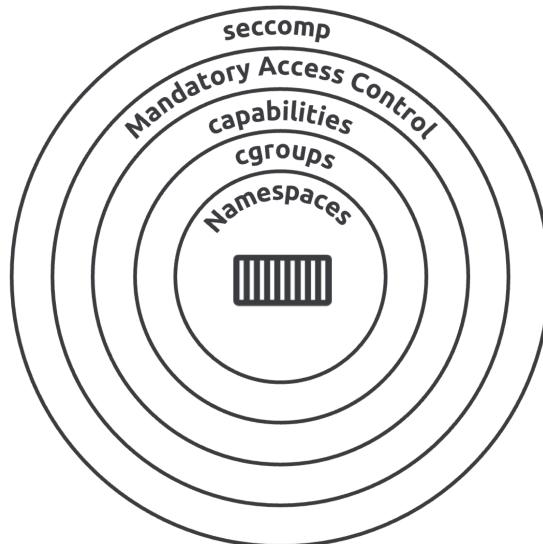


Figure 16.3 - Linux security defense in depth

Some of these technologies require knowledge of the Linux kernel and can be complex to customize. Fortunately, many platforms, including Docker, ship with defaults that are a good place to start.

Docker security technologies

Let's switch our focus to some of the security technologies Docker offers.

Swarm security

Docker Swarm lets you cluster multiple Docker hosts and manage applications declaratively. Every Swarm comprises *manager nodes* and *worker nodes* that can be Linux or Windows. Managers host the control plane and are responsible for configuring the cluster and dispatching work tasks. Workers run application containers.

Fortunately, *swarm mode* includes many security features that Docker automatically configures with sensible defaults. These include:

- Cryptographic node IDs
- TLS for mutual authentication

- Secure join tokens
- CA configuration with automatic certificate rotation
- Encrypted cluster store
- Encrypted networks

Let's walk through building a secure swarm and configuring some of the security aspects.

If you're following along, you'll need three Docker hosts that can ping each other by name. The examples use three hosts called **mgr1**, **mgr2**, and **wrk1**.

Configure a secure Swarm

Run the following command from the node you want to be the first manager. We'll run the example from **mgr1**.

```
$ docker swarm init  
Swarm initialized: current node (7xam...662z) is now a manager.
```

That's it! You've configured a secure swarm with a cryptographic cluster ID, an encrypted cluster store, a certificate authority with a 90-day certificate rotation policy, a set of secure join tokens to use when adding new managers and workers, and configured the current manager with a client certificate for mutual TLS — all with a single command!

Figure 16.4 shows the current swarm configuration. Some of the details may be different in your lab.

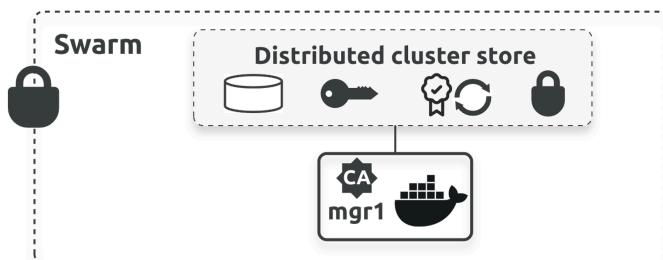


Figure 16.4

Let's join **mgr2** as an additional manager.

Joining new managers is a two-step process:

- Extract the secure join token
- Execute a **docker swarm join** command with the join token on the node you're adding

Run the following command from **mgr1** to extract the manager join token.

```
$ docker swarm join-token manager  
To add a manager to this swarm, run the following command:
```

```
docker swarm join --token \  
SWMTKN-1-1dmtwu...r17stb-2axi5...8p7glz \  
172.31.5.251:2377
```

The output gives you the full command and join token to run on **mgr2**. The join token and IP address will be different in your lab.

The format of the join **command** is:

- **docker swarm join --token <manager-join-token> <ip-of-existing-manager>:<swarm-port>**

The format of the **token** is:

- **SWMTKN-1-<hash-of-cluster-certificate>-<manager-join-token>**

Copy the command and run it on **mgr2**:

```
$ docker swarm join --token SWMTKN-1-1dmtwu...r17stb-2axi5...8p7glz 172.31.5.251:2377
```

This node joined a swarm as a manager.

List the nodes in your swarm.

```
$ docker node ls  
ID           HOSTNAME   STATUS    AVAILABILITY  MANAGER STATUS  
7xamk...ge662z  mgr1      Ready     Active        Leader  
i0ue4...zcjm7f *  mgr2      Ready     Active        Reachable
```

You now have a two-node swarm with **mgr1** and **mgr2** as managers. Both have access to the cluster store and are configured with client certificates for mutual TLS.

In the real world, you'll always run three or five managers for high availability.

Figure 16.5 shows the updated swarm with both managers.

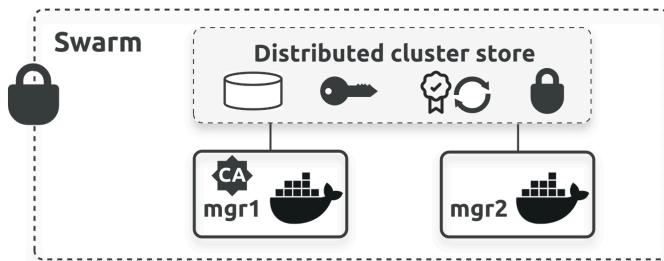


Figure 16.5

Adding worker nodes is a similar two-step process — extract the join token and run the command on the node.

Run the following command on either of the managers to expose the worker join command and token.

```
$ docker swarm join-token worker
```

To add a worker to this swarm, run the following command:

```
docker swarm join --token \
SWMTKN-1-1dmtw...17stb-ehp8g...w738q \
172.31.5.251:2377
```

Copy the command and run it on **wrk1**:

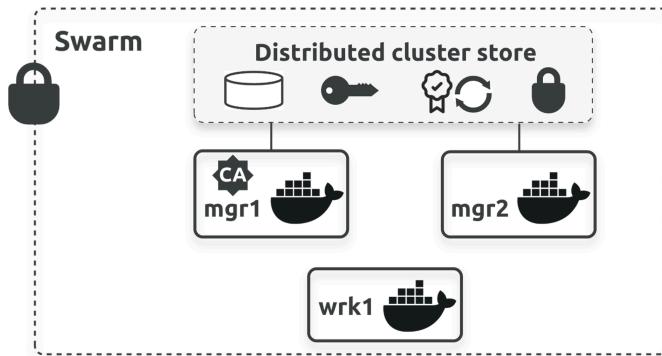
```
$ docker swarm join --token SWMTKN-1-1dmtw...17stb-ehp8g...w738q 172.31.5.251:2377
```

This node joined a swarm as a worker.

Run another **docker node ls** from either of your managers.

```
$ docker node ls
ID           HOSTNAME   STATUS    AVAILABILITY  MANAGER STATUS
7xamk...ge662z *   mgr1      Ready     Active        Leader
ailrd...ofzv1u     wrk1      Ready     Active
i0ue4...zcjm7f     mgr2      Ready     Active       Reachable
```

Your swarm has two managers and a worker. The managers are configured for high availability (HA) and the cluster store is replicated to both. The worker node is part of the swarm but cannot access the cluster store. Figure 16.6 shows the final configuration.

**Figure 16.6**

Now that you've built a secure Swarm, let's examine some of the security aspects.

Swarm join tokens

The only requirement for joining managers and workers is possession of the secure join token. This means you should keep them safe and never post them on public repos or even internal repos that are not restricted.

Every swarm maintains two distinct join tokens:

- Manager token
- Worker token

Every join token has four distinct fields separated by dashes (-):

- **PREFIX – VERSION – SWARM ID – TOKEN**

The prefix is always **SWMTKN** and allows you to pattern-match against it to prevent people from accidentally posting it publicly. The **VERSION** field indicates the version of the swarm. The **Swarm ID** field is a hash of the swarm's certificate. The **TOKEN** field is the worker or manager token.

As you can see in the following table, the manager and worker tokens for any given swarm are identical except for the final **TOKEN** field.

Role	Prefix	Version	Swarm ID	Token
Manager	SWMTKN	1	1dmtwusdc...r17stb	2axi53zjbs45lqxykaw8p7glz
Worker	SWMTKN	1	1dmtwusdc...r17stb	ehp8gltji64jbl45zl6hw738q

If you suspect either of your join tokens are compromised, you can revoke them and issue new ones with a single command. The following example revokes the existing *manager* token and issues a new one.

```
$ docker swarm join-token --rotate manager
```

```
Successfully rotated manager join token.
```

Existing managers are unaffected, but you can only add new ones with the new token.

As expected, the last field is the only difference between the old and new tokens.

Docker keeps a copy of join tokens in the encrypted cluster store.

TLS and mutual authentication

Docker issues every manager and worker with a client certificate that they use for mutual authentication. It identifies the node, the swarm it's a member of, and whether it's a manager or worker.

You can inspect a node's client certificate on Linux with the following command.

```
$ sudo openssl x509 \  
-in /var/lib/docker/swarm/certificates/swarm-node.crt \  
-text
```

Certificate:

```
Data:  
Version: 3 (0x2)  
Serial Number:  
    7c:ec:1c:8f:f0:97:86:a9:1e:2f:4b:a9:0e:7f:ae:6b:7b:b7:e3:d3  
Signature Algorithm: ecdsa-with-SHA256  
Issuer: CN = swarm-ca  
Validity  
    Not Before: May 23 08:23:00 2024 GMT  
    Not After : Aug 21 09:23:00 2024 GMT  
Subject: O = tcz3w1t7yu0s4wacovn1rtgp4, OU = swarm-manager,  
        CN = 2gxz2h1f0rnmc3atm35qcd1zw  
Subject Public Key Info:  
<SNIP>
```

As shown in Figure 16.7, the **Subject** field uses the standard **o**, **ou**, and **cn** fields to specify the Swarm ID, the node's role, and the node ID:

- The Organization (O) field stores the Swarm ID
- The Organizational Unit (OU) field stores the node's role in the swarm

- The Canonical Name (CN) field stores the node's crypto ID.

You can also see the certificate rotation period in the **Validity** section.

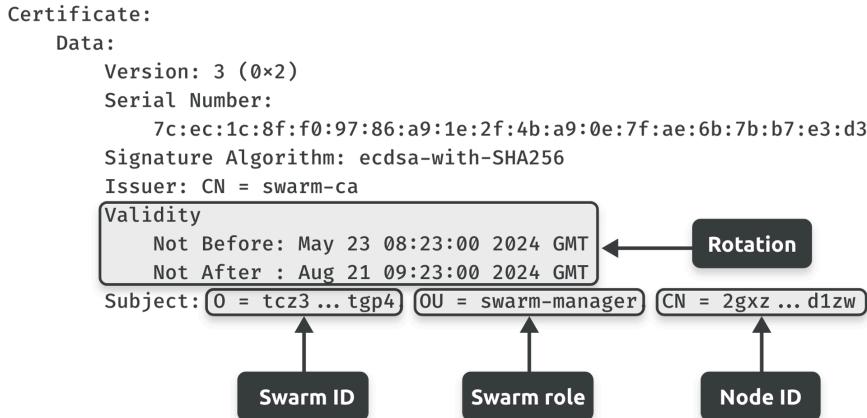


Figure 16.7

You can match these values to the corresponding values from a **docker info** command.

```
$ docker info
<SNIP>
Swarm: active
  NodeID: 2gxz2h1f0rnmc3atm35qcd1zw      <<---- Relates to the CN field
  Is Manager: true                         <<---- Relates to the OU field
  ClusterID: tcz3w1t7yu0s4wacovn1rtgp4    <<---- Relates to the O field
<SNIP>
  CA Configuration:
    Expiry Duration: 3 months              <<---- Relates to the validity block
    Force Rotate: 0
    Root Rotation In Progress: false
<SNIP>
```

Swarm CA configuration

You can use the **docker swarm update** command to configure the certificate rotation period. The following example changes it to 30 days.

```
$ docker swarm update --cert-expiry 720h
```

Swarm allows nodes to renew certificates early so that all nodes don't update at exactly the same time.

You can configure a new swarm to use an external CA by passing the **--external-ca** flag to **docker swarm init** command, and you can use the **docker swarm ca** command to manage other CA-related settings.

```
$ docker swarm ca --help

Usage: docker swarm ca [OPTIONS]

Display and rotate the root CA

Options:
  --ca-cert pem-file      Path to the PEM-formatted root CA certificate to use
                           for the new cluster
  --ca-key pem-file      Path to the PEM-formatted root CA key to use for the
                           new cluster
  --cert-expiry duration  Validity period for node certificates (ns|us|ms|s|m|h)
                           (default 2160h0m0s)
  -d, --detach            Exit immediately instead of waiting for the root rotation
                           to converge
  --external-ca external-ca  Specifications of one or more certificate signing endpoints
  -q, --quiet              Suppress progress output
  --rotate                Rotate the swarm CA - if no certificate or key are
                           provided, new ones will be generated
```

The cluster store

The cluster store is where Docker keeps the configuration and state of a swarm. It's also critical to other Docker technologies, such as overlay networks and secrets. This is why overlay networks and many other advanced security features only work in swarm mode.

The cluster store is based on the popular **etcd** distributed database and is automatically encrypted and replicated to all managers.

Docker handles day-to-day maintenance, but you should implement strong backup and recovery procedures for production clusters.

That's enough about swarm mode security for now. Let's look at some Docker security technologies that don't require swarm mode.

Docker Scout and vulnerability scanning

Every container runs multiple software packages that are susceptible to bugs and vulnerabilities that malicious actors can exploit.

Image scanning analyzes your images and produces a detailed list of all the software packages it uses. We call this list a *software bill of materials (SBOM)*, and the image

scanning system compares the SBOM against databases of known vulnerabilities and provides a report of vulnerabilities in your software. Most vulnerability scanners will rank the vulnerabilities and provide advice on fixes.

Vulnerability scanning is now an integral part of most software supply chains.

Docker Scout is Docker's native scanning platform and works with Docker Hub, Docker Desktop, the Docker CLI, and even has its own Docker Scout Dashboard. However, it's a subscription-based service.

Other scanning platforms are available, but most of these also require some form of subscription.

If you're using Docker Desktop, you can run the following command to see an example of Docker Scout.

```
$ docker scout quickview nigelpoulton/tu-demo:latest
```

```
✓ Provenance obtained from attestation
✓ Pulled
✓ Image stored for indexing
✓ Indexed 66 packages
```

Target digest	nigelpoulton/tu-demo:latest b4210d0aa52f	0C	4H	2M	0L
Base image	python:3-alpine	0C	2H	1M	0L
Updated base image	python:3.11-alpine	0C	1H	1M	0L

The output shows zero critical vulnerabilities (0C), four high (4H), two medium (2M), and zero low (0L).

You can also run a **docker scout cves** command to get more detailed information, including remediation advice.

```
$ docker scout cves nigelpoulton/tu-demo:latest
```

```
✓ SBOM of image already cached, 66 packages indexed
☒ Detected 6 vulnerable packages with a total of 8 vulnerabilities
## Overview
```

Analyzed Image					
Target digest	nigelpoulton/tu-demo:latest b4210d0aa52f				
platform	linux/arm64				
vulnerabilities	0C 4H 2M 0L				
size	26 MB				
packages	66				

```
## Packages and Vulnerabilities
  0C      1H      0L  expat 2.5.0-r2
pkg:apk/alpine/expat@2.5.0-r2?os_name=alpine&os_version=3.19

  ☈ HIGH CVE-2023-52425
  https://scout.docker.com/v/CVE-2023-52425
  Affected range : <2.6.0-r0
  Fixed version  : 2.6.0-r0

  ☈ MEDIUM CVE-2023-52426
  https://scout.docker.com/v/CVE-2023-52426
  Affected range : <2.6.0-r0
  Fixed version  : 2.6.0-r0
<Snip>
```

I've snipped the output, so it only shows some of the vulnerabilities. However, even from the snipped output in the book, you can see:

- Scout has scanned 66 packages and detected several vulnerabilities
- We're using version **2.5.0-r2** of the **expat** package which has one high (1H) and one medium (1M) vulnerability
- The high vulnerability is listed as **CVE-2023-52425** and the medium as **CVE-2023-52426**
- The report includes links to Scout reports containing more info on each vulnerability
- Scout recommends updating to **expat** version **2.6.0-r0** which contains fixes for both

Figure 16.8 shows what it looks like in Docker Desktop, and you get similar integrations and views in Docker Hub.

The screenshot shows the Docker Scout interface integrated into Docker Desktop. At the top, it displays the image details: **nigelpoulton/tu-demo:latest**, last pushed 3 months ago, size 26.23 MB, with a link to 'View recommended base image fixes'. Below this, the 'Analyzed by docker scout' logo is visible.

On the left, the 'Image hierarchy' shows the layers of the image, each with a shield icon indicating its status. The layers listed are:

- FROM alpine:3, 3.19, 3.19.1, latest (shield with exclamation)
- FROM python:3-alpine, 3-alpine3.19, 3.12-alpi... (shield with exclamation)
- ALL nigelpoulton/tu-demo:latest** (highlighted in blue, shield with exclamation)

On the right, there are three tabs: 'Images (3)', 'Vulnerabilities (8)' (which is selected), and 'Packages (66)'. Below these tabs is a search bar labeled 'Package or CVE name' and a 'Give feedback' button. A 'Fixable packages' checkbox is also present.

The 'Vulnerabilities' section displays a table with three rows of data:

Package	Vulnerabilities
alpine/expat 2.5.0	0 1 1 0 1
gunicorn 21.2.0	0 1 0 0 0
pip 24.0	0 1 0 0 0

At the bottom of the table, it says '1-6 of 6' with navigation arrows.

Figure 16.8 - Docker Scout integration with Docker Desktop

If you subscribe to Docker Scout, you can use the scout.docker.com portal to configure policies and integrations with Docker Hub and other registries.

As good as vulnerability scanning is, it only scans images and doesn't detect security problems with networks, nodes, or orchestrators. Also, not all image scanners are equal. For example, the best ones perform deep binary-level scans, whereas others may just look at package names and do not inspect content closely.

In summary, scanning tools are great for inspecting your images and detecting known vulnerabilities. Beware though, with great knowledge comes great responsibility — once you're aware of vulnerabilities, you're responsible for mitigating or fixing them.

Signing and verifying images with Docker Content Trust

Docker Content Trust (DCT) makes it simple for you to verify the integrity and publisher of images and is especially important when you're pulling images over untrusted networks such as the internet.

At a high level, DCT lets you sign your images when you push them to registries like Docker Hub. It also lets you verify the images you pull and run as containers.

Figure 16.9 shows the high-level process.

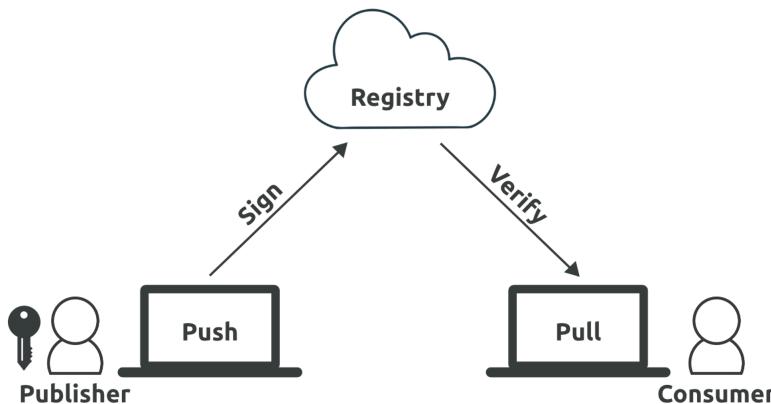


Figure 16.9 - Docker Content Trust image signing and verification

You can also use DCT to provide *context*, such as whether or not a developer has signed an image for use in a particular environment such as **prod** or **dev**, or whether an image has been superseded by a newer version and is therefore stale.

The following steps walk you through configuring Docker Content Trust, signing and pushing an image, and then pulling the signed image.

If you plan on following along, you'll need a cryptographic key pair. If you don't already have one, you can run the following **docker trust** command to generate one. The command generates a new key pair called **nigel** and loads it to the local trust store ready for use. It will prompt you to enter a passphrase; don't forget it :-)

```
$ docker trust key generate nigel
Generating key for nigel...
Enter passphrase for new nigel key with ID 1f78609:
Repeat passphrase for new nigel key with ID 1f78609:
Successfully generated and loaded private key.... key available: /Users/nigelpoulton/nigel.pub
```

If you already have a key pair, you can import and load it with **docker trust key load key.pem --name nigel**.

The next step is associating your key pair with the image repository to which you'll push signed images. This example associates the **nigel.pub** key with the **nigelpoulton/ddd-trust** repo on Docker Hub. Your key file and repo will be different, and the repository doesn't have to exist before you run the command.

```
$ docker trust signer add --key nigel.pub nigel nigelpoulton/ddd-trust
Adding signer "nigel" to nigelpoulton/dct...
Initializing signed repository for nigelpoulton/dct...
Enter passphrase for root key with ID aee3314:
Enter passphrase for new repository key with ID 1a18dd1:
Repeat passphrase for new repository key with ID 1a18dd1:
Successfully initialized "nigelpoulton/dct"
Successfully added signer: nigel to nigelpoulton/dct
```

Now that you've loaded the key pair and associated it with a repository, the final step is to sign an image and push it to the repo.

The following command signs a local image called **nigelpoulton/ddd-trust:signed** and pushes it to Docker Hub. Your image will have a different name and you'll push it to a different repo.

```
$ docker trust sign nigelpoulton/ddd-trust:signed
Signing and pushing trust data for local image nigelpoulton/ddd-trust:signed may...
The push refers to repository [docker.io/nigelpoulton/ddd-trust]
6495b414566f: Mounted from nigelpoulton/ddd-book
798576f7ef8b: Mounted from nigelpoulton/ddd-book
bca4290a639: Mounted from nigelpoulton/ddd-book
28ad2149d870: Mounted from nigelpoulton/ddd-book
4f4fb700ef54: Mounted from nigelpoulton/ddd-book
5e1fc7f5df34: Mounted from nigelpoulton/ddd-book
signed: digest: sha256:b65f9a1aa4e670bbaf0fb91281ea95f9cdc5728aa546579e248dfbc0ea4bde
Signing and pushing trust metadata
Enter passphrase for nigel key with ID 92330ea:
Successfully signed docker.io/nigelpoulton/ddd-trust:signed
```

The push operation creates the repo on Docker Hub and then signs and pushes the image. You can view the repo on Docker Hub, and you can run the following command to inspect its signing data.

```
$ docker trust inspect nigelpoulton/ddd-trust:signed --pretty
Signatures for nigelpoulton/ddd-trust:signed
  SIGNED TAG      DIGEST          SIGNERS
  signed        30e6d35703c578ee...4fcbbcb0f281      nigel

List of signers and their keys for nigelpoulton/ddd-trust:signed
  SIGNER      KEYS
  nigel       4d6f1bf55702

Administrative keys for nigelpoulton/ddd-trust:signed
  Repository Key:      5e72e54afaf8444f...6b2744b32010ad22
  Root Key:           40418fc47544ca630...69a2cb89028c22092
```

You can export the **DOCKER_CONTENT_TRUST** variable with a value of **1** to force a Docker host to sign and verify all images.

```
$ export DOCKER_CONTENT_TRUST=1
```

Once enabled, you won't be able to pull and work with unsigned images.

Test it by trying to pull an unsigned image.

```
$ docker pull nigelpoulton/ddd-book:web0.2
Error: remote trust data does not exist for docker.io/nigelpoulton/ddd-book: notary.docker.io
does not have trust data for docker.io/nigelpoulton/ddd-book
```

You can no longer pull images without trust data!

Delete the local copy of the image you just signed and pushed so that you can try pulling it from Docker Hub. Your image name will be different.

```
$ docker rmi nigelpoulton/ddd-trust:signed
Untagged: nigelpoulton/ddd-trust:signed@sha256...
<Snip>
```

Now, try pulling the image.

```
$ docker pull nigelpoulton/ddd-trust:signed
Pull (1 of 1): nigelpoulton/ddd-trust:signed@sha256:30e6...
docker.io/nigelpoulton/ddd-trust@sha256:30e6... Pulling from nigelpoulton/ddd-trust
08409d417260: Pull complete
Digest: sha256:30e6d35703c578ee703230b9dc87ada2ba958c1928615ac8a674fcbbcb0f281
Status: Downloaded newer image for nigelpoulton/ddd-trust@sha256:30e6...
Tagging nigelpoulton/ddd-trust@sha256:30e6... as nigelpoulton/ddd-trust:signed
docker.io/nigelpoulton/ddd-trust:signed
```

The pull worked because the image has valid trust data.

In summary, Docker Content Trust is an important technology that helps you verify the integrity of the images you pull and run. It's simple to configure in its basic form, but more advanced features, such as *context*, can be more complex.

Docker Secrets

Most applications leverage sensitive data such as passwords, certificates, and SSH keys. Fortunately, Docker lets you wrap them inside *secrets* to keep them secure.

Note: Secrets only work in swarm mode as they leverage the cluster store.

Behind the scenes, Docker encrypts secrets when they're *at rest* in the cluster store and while they're *in flight* on the network. It also uses *in-memory filesystems* to mount secrets into containers and operates a least-privilege model, where secrets are only available to services that have been explicitly granted access. There's even a **docker secret** command.

Figure 16.10 shows the high-level workflow of creating a secret and deploying it to service replicas:

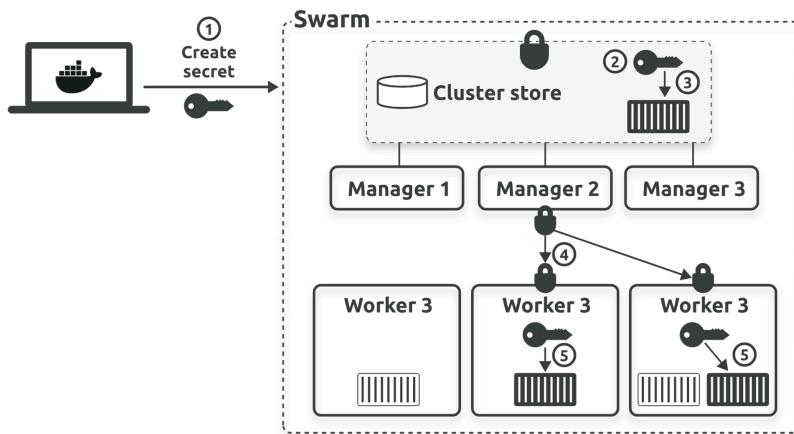


Figure 16.10 - Secret workflow

Let's go through the five steps in the diagram. I've used a key symbol to show the secret, and it's only available to the dark containers.

1. You create the secret
2. Docker stores it in the encrypted cluster store
3. You create a service (the dark containers) and grant it access to the secret
4. Docker encrypts the secret when sending it over the network to service replicas
5. Docker mounts the secret into service replicas as an unencrypted file in an in-memory filesystem

The light-colored containers are part of a different service and cannot access the secret.

As soon as replicas using the secret terminate, Docker destroys the in-memory filesystem and flushes the secret from the node.

Docker mounts secrets in their unencrypted form so that applications can use them without needing keys to decrypt them.

You can create and manage secrets with the **docker secret** command and attach them to services by passing the **--secret** flag to the **docker service create** command.

Clean up

If you've followed along, you've created a swarm, added a signer, created a new repo on Docker Hub, and exported an environment variable to sign and verify images automatically.

Run the following command to disable Docker Content Trust. You'll need to run it on every node where you enabled Docker Content Trust.

```
$ unset DOCKER_CONTENT_TRUST
```

Remove the signer from the repository you created. Your signer and repository will have different names.

```
$ docker trust signer remove nigel nigelpoulton/ddd-trust
Removing signer "nigel" from nigelpoulton/ddd-trust...
all signed tags are currently revoked, use docker trust sign to fix
```

You may also want to delete the repositories you created on Docker Hub and delete the local key files on your system (usually a .pub file in your home directory)

Delete the swarm by running the following command on all swarm nodes. You should run it on the swarm managers last.

```
$ docker swarm leave -f
```

Chapter Summary

You can configure Docker to be extremely secure. It supports all of the major Linux security technologies such as kernel namespaces, cgroups, capabilities, MAC, and seccomp. It ships with sensible defaults for all of these, but you can customize and even disable them.

In addition to the Linux security technologies, Docker includes an extensive set of its own security technologies. Swarms are built on TLS and are secure out of the box. Docker Scout performs binary-level image scans and provides detailed reports of known vulnerabilities and suggested fixes. Docker Content Trust lets you sign and verify images, and Docker secrets allow you to share sensitive data with swarm services.

What next

Thank you so much for reading my book. You're on your way to mastering containers!

About the front cover

I love this book's cover, and I'm grateful to the hundreds of people who voted for the design.

The YAML code on the left represents the book's technical nature. The Docker whale represents the main topic. The vertical symbols on the right are container-related icons done in the style of *digital rain* from the Matrix movies. There's also a hidden message written in Klingon.

Get involved with the community

There's a vibrant container community full of helpful people. Get involved with Docker groups and chats on the internet, and look up your local Docker or cloud-native meetup (search for "Docker meetup near me").

Kubernetes

Now that you know a thing or two about Docker, a great next step is Kubernetes. It's a lot like Swarm but has a larger scope and a more active community.

If you liked this book, you'll love my books on Kubernetes.

Connect with me

I'd love to connect with you and talk about Kubernetes and other cool tech.

You can reach me at all of the following:

- Twitter: twitter.com/nigelpoulton
- LinkedIn: linkedin.com/in/nigelpoulton
- Mastodon: [@nigelpoulton@hachyderm.io](https://nigelpoulton@hachyderm.io)
- Web: nigelpoulton.com

- YouTube: youtube.com/nigelpoulton
- Delete me

Feedback and reviews

Books live and die by Amazon reviews and stars.

I've spent more than a year of my life writing this book, and I work tirelessly keeping it up-to-date. Soooo... please take a moment to leave a kind review on Amazon or Goodreads.

Also, ping me at ddd@nigelpoulton.com if you want to suggest content or fixes for future editions.

Terminology

This glossary defines some of the most common Docker and container-related terms used in the book.

If you think I've missed anything important, ping me at ddd@nigelpoulton.com.

Term	Definition (according to Nigel)
API	Application Programming Interface. In the case of Docker, all resources are defined in the Docker API, which is RESTful and exposed via the <i>Docker Daemon</i> .
Base image	The first layer of all container images. Created by the Dockerfile FROM instruction and usually contains a minimal set of OS constructs required by an application.
Build	The process of building a new container image. Docker <i>builds</i> images by stepping through a set of instructions defined in a Dockerfile.
Build Cloud	A subscription service that performs fast and efficient image builds in Docker's cloud infrastructure. It allows you to share a common build-cache among teams for very fast builds.
BuildKit	Docker's build engine that implements advanced build features such as advanced caching, multi-stage builds, and multi-architecture builds.
Buildx	Docker's latest and greatest build client that supports all the latest features of BuildKit, such as multi-stage builds and multi-architecture images. Buildx has been Docker's default build client since Docker Engine v23.0 and Docker Desktop v4.19.
Capability	Linux kernel technology used by Docker to create user accounts with the precise set of system access they need.

Term	Definition (according to Nigel)
Cloud native	A loaded term that means different things to different people. Cloud native is a way of designing, building, and working with modern applications and infrastructure. I consider an application to be <i>cloud native</i> if it can self-heal, scale on-demand, perform rolling updates, and versioned rollbacks.
Cluster store	Docker Swarm's distributed database that holds the state of the cluster and apps. Based on the etcd distributed database, it is automatically encrypted and automatically distributed across all swarm managers for high availability.
Compose	An open specification for defining, deploying, and managing multi-container microservices apps. Docker implements the Compose spec and provides the docker compose command to make it easy to work with Compose apps.
Container	A container is a collection of kernel namespaces organized to look, smell, and feel like a regular operating system. Each container runs a single application, and containers are smaller, faster, and more portable than virtual machines. We sometimes call them <i>Docker containers</i> or <i>OCI containers</i> .
Container Network Model	Pluggable interface enabling different network topologies and architectures. Third parties provide CNM plugins for overlay networks and BGP networks, as well as various implementations of each.

Term	Definition (according to Nigel)
Container runtime	Software running on every Docker node responsible for pulling container images, starting containers, stopping containers, and other low-level container operations. Docker uses two runtimes that work together: containerd is Docker's high-level runtime that manages lifecycle events such as starting and stopping containers, whereas runc is Docker's low-level runtime that interfaces with kernel constructs such as namespaces and cgroups.
containerd	Industry-standard container runtime used by Docker and most Kubernetes clusters. Donated to the CNCF by Docker, Inc. Pronounced "container dee".
Containerize	The process of packaging an application and all dependencies into a container image.
Control Groups (cgroups)	Linux kernel feature that Docker uses to limit the amount of host CPU, RAM, disk, and network resources a container uses.
Desired state	How your cluster and applications should be. For example, the <i>desired state</i> of an application microservice might be five replicas of xyz container listening on port 8080/tcp. Vital to reconciliation.
Docker	Platform that makes it easy to work with containerized apps. It allows you to build images, as well as run and manage standalone containers and multi-container apps.
Docker Debug	Docker CLI plugin that lets you easily debug slim images and containers that don't ship with any debugging tools.
Docker Desktop	Desktop application for Linux, Mac, and Windows that makes working with Docker easy. It has a slick UI and many advanced features like image management, vulnerability scanning, and Wasm support.

Term	Definition (according to Nigel)
Docker Hub	High-performance OCI-compliant image registry. Docker Hub has over 57PB of storage and handles an average of 30K requests per second.
Docker, Inc.	US-based technology company making it easy for developers to build, ship, and run containerized applications. The company behind the Docker platform.
Docker init	A new Docker CLI plugin that creates high-fidelity Dockerfiles and makes it easy to scaffold Compose apps.
Docker Scout	Docker's native vulnerability scanning service. Scout is a subscription service that integrates with the Docker CLI, Docker Desktop, Docker Hub, and other image registries.
Dockerfile	Plain text file with instructions telling Docker how to build an application into a container image.
etcd	The open-source distributed database used by Docker Swarm.
Image	Archive containing application code, all dependencies, and the metadata required to start a single application as a container. We sometimes call them <i>OCI images</i> , <i>container images</i> , or <i>Docker images</i> .
Ingress network	Hidden network on all Docker Swarm clusters used to publish services to external clients.
Kernel namespace	Feature of the Linux kernel used by Docker to isolate containers from processes running on the host and in other containers.
Layer	Image layers contain modifications to the base image or the layer below them. Docker builds images by stacking layers, each containing changes to the layer below it. A simple example is a base layer that has basic OS constructs, followed by a layer with the application. The two combined layers create the image with the OS and app.

Term	Definition (according to Nigel)
libcontainer	A Go library that uses namespaces, cgroups, and capabilities to build containers. Docker uses libcontainer via the runc low-level runtime that is a CLI wrapper around libcontainer.
libnetwork	The Go library used by Docker to create and manage container networks.
Microservices	Design pattern for modern applications. Individual application features are developed as their own small applications (microservices/containers) and communicate via APIs. They work together to form a useful application.
Multi-architecture builds (sometimes called multi-platform builds)	Allows you to build images for multiple architectures and platforms with a single docker build command. For example, you can run a single docker build command on an AMD-based Windows system to build an AMD image and an ARM image.
Multi-state build	Allows you to create very small images (slim images). You build your images in stages and only carry forward the necessary artifacts for each next stage. Each build stage is represented by its own FROM instruction in your Dockerfile, and later build stages use the COPY --from instruction to use artifacts from previous stages and leave everything else behind.
Observed state	Also known as <i>current state</i> or <i>actual state</i> . The most up-to-date view of the cluster and running applications. Docker Swarm is always working to make <i>observed state</i> match <i>desired state</i> .
Open Container Initiative (OCI)	Lightweight governance body responsible for creating and maintaining standards for low-level container technologies such as images, runtimes, and registries. Docker creates OCI-compliant images, implements an OCI-compliant runtime, and Docker Hub is an OCI-compliant registry.

Term	Definition (according to Nigel)
Orchestrator	Software that deploys and manages apps. Docker Swarm and Kubernetes are examples of orchestrators that manage microservices apps, keep them healthy, scale them up and down, and more...
Overlay network	A large flat layer-2 network that spans multiple swarm nodes. All containers on the same overlay network can communicate with each other even if they're on different Docker hosts that are on different networks. The built-in overlay driver creates overlay networks using advanced VXLAN technologies. They are only supported by Docker Swarm.
Push	Upload an image to a registry.
Pull	Download an image from a registry.
Reconciliation	The process of watching the state of an application and ensuring observed state matches desired state. Docker Swarm runs reconciliation loops, ensuring applications run how you want them to.
Registry	Central place for storing and retrieving images. We sometimes call them <i>OCI registries</i> , <i>container registries</i> , or <i>Docker registries</i> .
Repository	An area of a registry where you store related container images. You can set access controls per repository.
Seccomp	Secure computing Linux kernel feature used by Docker to restrict the syscalls available to a container.
Secret	The way Docker Swarm lets you inject sensitive data into a container at run-time.
Service	Capital "S" is a Docker Swarm feature that augments containers with self-healing, scaling, rollouts, and rollbacks.

Term	Definition (according to Nigel)
Spin	Framework that makes it easy to build, deploy, and run Wasm apps. Docker Desktop ships with the spin runtime. Created by Fermyon Technologies, Inc.
Swarm (also known as Docker Swarm	Docker's native orchestration platform. A lightweight and easy alternative to Kubernetes.
Volume	Where containers store important data they need to keep. You can create and delete volumes independently from containers.
Wasm	See WebAssembly.
WebAssembly	Also known as Wasm. New virtual machine architecture that is smaller, faster, more portable, and more secure than traditional containers. Wasm apps run anywhere with a Wasm runtime.
YAML	Yet Another Markup Language. You write Compose files in YAML. It's a superset of JSON.

Index

placeholder just to create index